

By Authority Of THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA Legally Binding Document

CERTIFICATE

By the Authority Vested By Part 5 of the United States Code § 552(a) and Part 1 of the Code of Regulations § 51 the attached document has been duly INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE and shall be considered legally binding upon all citizens and residents of the United States of America. <u>HEED THIS NOTICE</u>: Criminal penalties may apply for noncompliance.



Document Name: SCTE 28: Host-POD Interface Standard

CFR Section(s): 47 CFR 15.123(b)(4)

Standards Body: Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers



Official Incorporator:

THE EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR OFFICE OF THE FEDERAL REGISTER WASHINGTON, D.C.



Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers

ENGINEERING COMMITTEE Digital Video Subcommittee

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARD

ANSI/SCTE 28 2007

HOST-POD Interface Standard

NOTICE

The Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers (SCTE) Standards are intended to serve the public interest by providing specifications, test methods and procedures that promote uniformity of product, interchangeability and ultimately the long term reliability of broadband communications facilities. These documents shall not in any way preclude any member or nonmember of SCTE from manufacturing or selling products not conforming to such documents, nor shall the existence of such standards preclude their voluntary use by those other than SCTE members, whether used domestically or internationally.

SCTE assumes no obligations or liability whatsoever to any party who may adopt the Standards. Such adopting party assumes all risks associated with adoption of these Standards or Recommended Practices, and accepts full responsibility for any damage and/or claims arising from the adoption of such Standards or Recommended Practices.

Attention is called to the possibility that implementation of this standard may require use of subject matter covered by patent rights. By publication of this standard, no position is taken with respect to the existence or validity of any patent rights in connection therewith. SCTE shall not be responsible for identifying patents for which a license may be required or for conducting inquires into the legal validity or scope of those patents that are brought to its attention.

Patent holders who believe that they hold patents which are essential to the implementation of this standard have been requested to provide information about those patents and any related licensing terms and conditions. Any such declarations made before or after publication of this document are available on the SCTE web site at http://www.scte.org.

All Rights Reserved

© Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers, Inc. 140 Philips Road Exton, PA 19341

Table of Contents

| 1 | | | | |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------|----|--|--|
| 2 | | | | |
| | 2.1 Historical Perspective (INFORMATIVE) | | | |
| | 2.2 Advanced Cable Services (INFORMATIVE) | | | |
| | 2.2.1 Interactive Program Guide (IPG) | | | |
| | 2.2.2 Impulse Pay-Per-View (IPPV) | 3 | | |
| | 2.2.3 Video-on-Demand (VOD) | | | |
| | 2.2.4 Interactive services | 3 | | |
| | 2.3 References | 4 | | |
| | 2.3.1 Normative references | 4 | | |
| | 2.3.2 Informative references | 6 | | |
| 3 | CEA 679 Part B Compliance | | | |
| | 3.1 Exceptions to Compliance | 7 | | |
| 4 | System Architecture (INFORMATIVE) | 13 | | |
| | 4.1 Introduction | 13 | | |
| | 4.2 Two-way Networks | 14 | | |
| | 4.3 One-way Networks | 15 | | |
| | 4.4 Two-way Networks with DOCSIS | 17 | | |
| 5 | Extended channel data flows | 18 | | |
| | 5.1 Internet Protocol Flows (Informative) | 18 | | |
| | 5.2 Flow Examples—QPSK Modem Case (Informative) | | | |
| | 5.3 Flow Examples— High Speed Host Modem Case DSG Mode | 20 | | |
| | 5.4 Summary of Extended Channel Flow Requirement (Normative) | | | |
| | 5.5 System/Service Information Requirements (Normative) | | | |
| | 5.6 Emergency Alert Requirements (Normative) | 22 | | |
| 6 | Physical Interface (NORMATIVE) | 23 | | |
| | 6.1 PC Card Compliance | 23 | | |
| | 6.1.1 POD Module Port Custom Interface (0341h) | 23 | | |
| | 6.1.2 Power Management | | | |
| | 6.1.3 Pin Assignment | 24 | | |
| | 6.2 POD Module Identification | 27 | | |
| | 6.3 Card Information Structure | 27 | | |
| | 6.4 Host-POD OOB Interface | 28 | | |
| | 6.4.1 Out of Band (OOB) Mode | 28 | | |
| | 6.4.2 DOCSIS Settop Gateway (DSG Mode | | | |
| | 6.4.3 Timing and Voltage Parameters | | | |
| | 6.5 CPU Interface | | | |
| | 6.5.1 Control Register Modification | | | |
| | 6.5.2 Status Register Modification | | | |
| | 6.6 Copy Protection on the FAT Channel | | | |
| | 6.7 Host-POD Interface Initialization | 36 | | |
| | 6.7.1 Descriptions | | | |
| | 6.7.2 Configuration Option Register (Normative) | | | |
| | 6.7.3 Initialization Conditions | | | |
| | 6.7.4 OOB Connection and Disconnection Behavior | 40 | | |
| | 6.7.5 Low Level Step by Step POD Personality Change Sequence | 41 | | |
| | 6.7.6 Initialization Overview | | | |
| | 6.7.7 Interrupt Operation | | | |
| | 6.8 Mechanical Design | | | |
| 7 | Link Interface (NORMATIVE) | | | |
| | 7.1 Data Channel | | | |
| | 7.2 Extended Channel | | | |
| | 7.2.1 Maximum PDUs | 51 | | |

| 8 | Application Interface (NORMATIVE) | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| | 8.1 Sco | pe Introduction | 52 |
| | | ource Manager | |
| | 8.3 Mar | n Machine Interface | 54 |
| | 8.3.1 | Introduction | |
| | 8.3.2 | Open_mmi_req() & Open_mmi_cnf() | |
| | 8.3.3 | Close_mmi_req() & Close_mmi_cnf() | |
| | 8.4 App | lication Information | |
| | 8.4.1 | Introduction | |
| | 8.4.2 | Application_info_req() & Application_info_cnf() | |
| | 8.4.3 | Server_Query() & Server_Reply() | |
| | | / Speed Communication () | |
| | | ditional Access | |
| | 8.6.1 | CA_update() | |
| | - | y Protection | |
| | | t Control | |
| | 8.8.1 | OOB_TX_tune_req() & OOB_TX_tune_cnf() | |
| | 8.8.2 | OOB_RX_tune_req() & OOB_RX_tune_cnf() | |
| | 8.8.3 | inband_tune_req() (Normative) | |
| | 8.8.4 | inband_tuning_cnf (Normative) | |
| | | ended Channel Support | |
| | 8.9.1 | New_flow_req() & New_flow_cnf() | |
| | 8.9.2 | Delete_flow_req() & Delete_flow_cnf() | |
| | 8.9.3 | Lost_flow_ind() & Lost_flow_cnf() | |
| | 8.9.4 | inquire_DSG_mode(), set_DSG_mode(), & DSG_packet_error() | |
| | | eric IPPV Support | |
| | 8.10.1 | Program_req() & Program_cnf() | |
| | 8.10.2 | Purchase_req() & Purchase_cnf() Cancel req() & Cancel cnf() | 74 74 |
| | 8.10.3 | | |
| | 8.10.4 8.11 Spe | History_req() & History_cnf() cific Application Support | |
| | 8.11.1 | Specific Application Support Connectivity | |
| | 8.11.1 | Resource Identifier | |
| | 8.11.2 | Application Objects | |
| | | eric Feature Control Support | |
| | 8.12 Uen 8.12.1 | Parameter Storage | |
| | 8.12.1 | Parameter Operation | |
| | 8.12.3 | Host to POD Module Transfer | |
| | 8.12.4 | Resource Identifier | |
| | 8.12.5 | Feature ID | |
| | 8.12.6 | Application Objects | |
| | 8.12.7 | Feature Parameter Definition | |
| | | D Module Firmware Upgrade | |
| | 8.13.1 | Introduction (Informative) | |
| | 8.13.2 | Implementation | |
| | 8.13.3 | Homing Resource (Normative) | |
| | 8.14 Gen | eric Diagnostic Support | |
| | 8.14.1 | Diagnostic req() | |
| | 8.14.2 | Diagnostic cnf() | |
| | 8.14.3 | Diagnostic Report Definition | 74 |
| | 8.15 Sup | port for Common Download Specification | |
| | 8.15.1 | Overview of Protocol (Informative) | |
| | 8.15.2 | OPERATIONAL DETAILS (Informative) | 74 |
| | 8.15.3 | System Control Resource (Normative) | 74 |
| A | PPENDIX A | | |
| | A.1. Data | a Path Options | 74 |

| A.2. OOB TX Channel Available | 74 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| A.3. High Speed Modem Available | 74 |
| A.3.1. OOB TX Channel Available | 74 |
| A.3.2. OOB TX Channel Not Available | 74 |
| APPENDIX B. Glossary | |
| APPENDIX C. Baseline HTML Profile Requirements | 74 |
| C.1. Format | 74 |
| C.1.1. Display | 74 |
| C.1.2. Font | 74 |
| C.1.3. Text and Background Colors | 74 |
| C.1.4. Unvisited Link Color | 74 |
| C.1.5. Paragraph | 74 |
| C.1.6. Image | 74 |
| C.1.7. Table | 74 |
| C.1.8. Forms | 74 |
| C.2. Supported User Interactions | 74 |
| C.2.1. Navigation and Links | 74 |
| C.3. HTML Keywords | 74 |
| C.4. Characters | 74 |
| APPENDIX D. POD Module Attribute and Configuration Registers | 74 |
| D.1. General | 74 |
| D.2. Attribute Tuples | 74 |
| D.2.1. CISTPL_LINKTARGET | 74 |
| D.2.2. CISTPL_DEVICE_0A | |
| D.2.3. CISTPL_DEVICE_0C | 74 |
| D.2.4. CISTPL_VERS_1 | 74 |
| D.2.5. CISTPL_CONFIG | 74 |
| D.2.6. CCST_CIF | 74 |
| D.2.7. CISTPL_CFTABLE_ENTRY | 74 |
| D.2.8. CISTPL_END | 74 |
| D.2.9. Configuration Option Register | 74 |
| APPENDIX E. POD Error Handling | |
| E.1. Error Handling | 74 |

List of Tables

| Table 3.1-A CEA 679 Part B Compliance Exceptions | 7 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Table 3.1-B Replacement for CEA-679-C Table 87 Resource Identifier Values | 11 |
| Table 3.1-C Replacement for CEA-679-C Table 91 Application Object Tag Values | 11 |
| Table 6.1-A PC Card Signal Definitions | 26 |
| Table 6.3-A CIS Minimum Set of Tuples | 28 |
| Table 6.4-A Transmission Signals for Host-POD Interface | 29 |
| Table 6.5-A Extended Interface Registers | |
| Table 6.7-A Create Transport Connection | |
| Table 6.7-B Create Transport Connection Reply | 45 |
| Table 6.7-C Open Session Request | |
| Table 6.7-D Open Session Response | |
| Table 6.7-E Profile Inquiry | |
| Table 6.7-F Profile Reply | |
| Table 6.7-G Profile Changed | |
| Table 6.7-H Profile Inquiry | |
| Table 6.7-I Profile Reply | |
| Table 7.2-A Extended Channel Link Layer Packet | |
| Table 8.1-A Host-POD Interface Resources | |
| Table 8.1-B Host-POD Interface Resource Loading | |
| Table 8.3-A Man Machine Interface Resource. | |
| Table 8.3-B Man Machine Interface Objects | |
| Table 8.3-C Open MMI Request Object Syntax | |
| Table 8.3-D Open MMI Confirm Object Syntax | |
| Table 8.3-E Open Status Values | 57 |
| Table 8.3-F Close MMI Request Object Syntax. | |
| Table 8.3-G Close MMI Confirm Object Syntax | |
| Table 8.4-A Application Information Resource | |
| Table 8.4-B Table Application Information Objects | |
| Table 8.4-C Application Information Request Object Syntax | |
| Table 8.4-D Data Entry Support Values | |
| Table 8.4-E HTML Support Values | |
| Table 8.4-F Link Support Values | |
| Table 8.4-G Form Support Values | |
| Table 8.4-H Table Support Values | |
| Table 8.4-I List Support Values | |
| Table 8.4-J Image Support Values | |
| Table 8.4-5 Image Support Values Table 8.4-K Application Information Confirm Object Syntax | |
| Table 8.4-K Application monitation Commit Object Syntax | |
| | |
| Table 8.4-M Application Type Values | |
| Table 8.4-N Server Query Object Syntax Table 8.4-O Server Reply Object Syntax | |
| 15 5 5 | |
| Table 8.4-P File Status Values | |
| Table 8.5-A Low Speed Communication Resource Table 8.6 A Combining Assess Support Process | |
| Table 8.6-A Conditional Access Support Resource Table 8.6-D Conditional Access Support Resource | |
| Table 8.6-B Conditional Access Support Objects Table 8.6-B Conditional Access Support Objects | /1 |
| Table 8.6-C Conditional Access Support CA_update Object Syntax Table 8.6-C Conditional Access Support CA_update Object Syntax | |
| Table 8.6-D CA Enable Field Values | |
| Table 8.8-A Host Control Resource Table 8.8-A Host Control Resource | |
| Table 8.8-B Host Control Objects | |
| Table 8.8-C OOB TX Tune Request Object Syntax. | |
| Table 8.8-D RF TX Frequency Value | |
| | |
| Table 8.8-E RF TX Power Level Table 8.8-F RF TX Rate Value | 74 |

| Table 8.8-G OOB IX Tune Confirm Object Syntax 74 Table 8.8-I Status Field Values for OOB TX Tune Confirm 74 Table 8.8-I FR X Frequency Value 74 Table 8.8-I FR X Frequency Value 74 Table 8.8-I FR X Frequency Value 74 Table 8.8-I NBAR Tune Confirm Object Syntax 74 Table 8.8-I Nue Nue Confirm Object Syntax 74 Table 8.8-I nue Type Values 74 Table 8.8-I nue Status Values 74 Table 8.9-I Nue Nuescource 74 Table 8.9-I Nuescource Object Syntax 74 Table 8.9-I Nuescource Object Syntax 74 Table 8.9-I Did Obduce DICP Vendor Class Indentifer (Option | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|----|
| Table 8.8-I OOB RX Tune Request Object Syntax 74 Table 8.8-R RF RX Data Rate. 74 Table 8.8-R RF RX Data Rate. 74 Table 8.8-R RF RX Data Rate. 74 Table 8.8-R Status Field Values for OOB RX Tune Confirm 74 Table 8.8-N Inband Tune Request Object Syntax 74 Table 8.8-N Inband Tune Request Object Syntax 74 Table 8.8-N Inband Tune Confirm Object Syntax 74 Table 8.8-T Nue Status Values 74 Table 8.8-T Rune Status Values 74 Table 8.8-T Rune Status Values 74 Table 8.9-C New Flow Request Object Syntax 74 Table 8.9-S Status Fold Values for New Flow Request 74 Table 8.9-S Tatus Field Values for New Flow Request 74 Table 8.9-S Tatus Field Values for New Flow Confirm 74 Table 8.9-T POD Module DHCP Vendor Specific Information (Option 43) Sub-option Encoding 74 Table 8.9-T Detee Flow Confirm Object Syntax 74 Table 8.9-T Detee Flow Confirm Object Syntax 74 Table 8.9-T Dot Module DHCP Vendor Specific Information (Option 43) Sub-option Encoding 74 Table 8.9-T Detee Flow Confirm Object Syntax 74 Table 8.9-T Detee Flow Confirm Object Syntax </td <td></td> <td></td> | | |
| Table 8.8-J. RF RX Trequency Value74Table 8.8-J. RF RX Data Rate.74Table 8.8-K RF XD tata Rate.74Table 8.8-M Status Field Values for OOB RX Tune Confirm74Table 8.8-D Tune Type Values74Table 8.8-D Tune Type Values74Table 8.8-D Tune Type Values74Table 8.8-D Tune Status74Table 8.8-D Extended Channel Object Syntax74Table 8.9-A Extended Channel Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Service Type Values for New Flow Request.74Table 8.9-D Service Type Values for New Flow Request.74Table 8.9-D Service Type Values for New Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-F Status Field Values for New Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-F Istatus Field Values for New Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-F Istatus Field Values for New Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-F DD Module DHCP Vendor Specific Information (Option 43) Sub-option Encoding.74Table 8.9-F Status Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-F Dottrim Object Syntax74Table 8.9-F Dottrim Object Syntax74Table 8.9-F Dottrim Object Syntax74Table 8.9-F Dottrim Object Syntax74T | | |
| Table 8.8-K RF RX Data Rate.74Table 8.8-M Status Field Values for OOB RX Tune Confirm74Table 8.8-M Status Field Values for OOB RX Tune Confirm74Table 8.8-D Tune Type Values.74Table 8.8-D Tune Type Values.74Table 8.8-D Tune Type Values.74Table 8.8-D Tune Status Values.74Table 8.8-R Inband Tuning Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.8-R Inband Tuning Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.8-R Inband Tuning Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-R Extended Channel Resource.74Table 8.9-A Extended Channel Resource.74Table 8.9-D Service Type Values for New Flow Request.74Table 8.9-E New Flow Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-E New Flow Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-F Istatus Field Values for New Flow Request.74Table 8.9-F Istatus Field Values for New Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-F IDD Module DHCP Vendor Class Indentifier (Option 43) Sub-option Encoding.74Table 8.9-F IDD Dodule DHCP Vendor Class Indentifier (Option 60) Encoding.74Table 8.9-F Natus Field for Delete Flow74Table 8.9-F Natus Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-F Natus Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-F Natus Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-F Natus Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-F Natus Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-F Natus Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-F Natus Field Values f | Table 8.8-I OOB RX Tune Request Object Syntax | 74 |
| Table 8.8-L OOB RX Tune Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.8-M Istaus Field Values for OOB RX Tune Confirm74Table 8.8-N Inhand Tune Request Object Syntax74Table 8.8-N Inhand Tune Request Object Syntax74Table 8.8-N Inhand Tuning Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.8-R Inhand Tuning Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.8-R Inhand Tuning Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.8-R Inhand Tuning Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-A Extended Channel Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Service Type Values for New Flow Request.74Table 8.9-E New Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-F Istaus Field Values for New Flow Confirm.74Table 8.9-F DOD Module DHCP Vendor Specific Information (Option 43) Sub-option Encoding74Table 8.9-F DOD Module DHCP Vendor Class Indentifier (Option 60) Encoding74Table 8.9-F Status Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-F Neason Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-F Neason Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-F Natus Field Nalues for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-F Natus Field Nalues for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-F Status Field Nalues for Program Confirm74Table 8.9-C Dot Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-F Dot Mode Object Syntax74Table 8.9-F Status Field Values for Program C | | |
| Table 8.8-M Status Field Values for OOB RX Tune Confirm74Table 8.8-O Tune Type Values74Table 8.8-O Tune Type Values74Table 8.8-O Tune Type Values74Table 8.8-O Tune Type Values74Table 8.8-O Tune Status Values74Table 8.8-D Kune Status Values74Table 8.8-D Kune Status Values74Table 8.8-S Tune Status Values74Table 8.9-B Extended Channel Resource74Table 8.9-D Kertice Type Values for New Flow Request74Table 8.9-D Service Type Values for New Flow Request74Table 8.9-D Service Type Values for New Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-G Flag field definitions74Table 8.9-G Flag field definitions74Table 8.9-G Flag field definitions74Table 8.9-I Dolt Module DHCP Vendor Class Indentifier (Option 43) Sub-option Encoding74Table 8.9-I Delete Flow Request Object Syntax74Table 8.9-I Delete Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-I Status Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-I Status Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-I Delete Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-I Status Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-D Reson Field Values for Lost Flow Indication </td <td></td> <td></td> | | |
| Table 8.8-N Inband Tune Request Object Syntax74Table 8.8-P Tune Values74Table 8.8-P Tune Value74Table 8.8-P Tune Value74Table 8.8-P Tune Value74Table 8.8-S Tune Status Values74Table 8.8-S Tune Status Values74Table 8.9-B Extended Channel Object Syntax74Table 8.9-B Extended Channel Object Syntax74Table 8.9-B Streine Type Values for New Flow Request.74Table 8.9-B Service Type Values for New Flow Request.74Table 8.9-E New Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-F Status Field Values for New Flow Confirm.74Table 8.9-F DOD Module DHCP Vendor Class Indentifier (Option 43) Sub-option Encoding74Table 8.9-F DOD Module DHCP Vendor Class Indentifier (Option 60) Encoding74Table 8.9-J Delete Flow Request Object Syntax74Table 8.9-L Natus Field for Delete Tyntax74Table 8.9-L Natus Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-D Lost Flow Indication Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Solg Obsect error Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Status Field Values for Program Confirm74Table | | |
| Table 8.8-O Tune Type Values74Table 8.8-P Tune Value74Table 8.8-Q Modulation Value74Table 8.8-Q Modulation Value74Table 8.8-T Tune Status Values74Table 8.9-T Struen Status Values74Table 8.9-T Struen Status Values74Table 8.9-D Extrended Channel Resource74Table 8.9-D Extrended Channel Resource74Table 8.9-D Evrice Type Values for New Flow Request74Table 8.9-D Evrice Type Values for New Flow Request74Table 8.9-D Service Type Values for New Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-F New Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-F POD Module DHCP Vendor Specific Information (Option 43) Sub-option Encoding74Table 8.9-I POD Module DHCP Vendor Class Indentifier (Option 60) Encoding74Table 8.9-I Noblect Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-I Noblect Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-I Noblect Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-I Natus Field for Delete Flow74Table 8.9-I Status Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-I Status Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-I Status Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-I Status Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-I Status Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-I Status Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-I Status Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-I Status Field Values for Program Confirm74T | | |
| Table 8.8-P Tune Value.74Table 8.8-Q Modulation Value.74Table 8.8-R Inband Tuning Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.8-R Inband Tuning Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-B Extended Channel Resource.74Table 8.9-C New Flow Request Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Service Type Values for New Flow Request.74Table 8.9-E New Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-G Flag field definitions74Table 8.9-G Flag field definitions74Table 8.9-G Flag field definitions74Table 8.9-G POD Module DHCP Vendor Class Indentifier (Option 43) Sub-option Encoding74Table 8.9-D POD Module DHCP Vendor Class Indentifier (Option 60) Encoding74Table 8.9-D Lotter Flow Request Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Lotter Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Lotter Flow Indication Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Lotter Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Status Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-D Status Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-D Status Field Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.9-D Program Confirm Object Syntax74 <tr< td=""><td>Table 8.8-N Inband Tune Request Object Syntax</td><td> 74</td></tr<> | Table 8.8-N Inband Tune Request Object Syntax | 74 |
| Table 8.8-Q Modulation Value.74Table 8.8-R Inband Tuning Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.8-S Tune Status Values74Table 8.9-A Extended Channel Resource.74Table 8.9-B Extended Channel Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-D Evrice Type Values for New Flow Request.74Table 8.9-D Evrice Type Values for New Flow Request.74Table 8.9-D Evrice Type Values for New Flow Confirm.74Table 8.9-F New Flow Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-G Flag field definitions74Table 8.9-F DOD Module DHCP Vendor Specific Information (Option 43) Sub-option Encoding.74Table 8.9-I POD Module DHCP Vendor Class Indentifier (Option 60) Encoding.74Table 8.9-J Delete Flow Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-L Status Field for Delete Flow74Table 8.9-L Status Field for Delete Flow74Table 8.9-L Status Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-N Reason Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-D Lost Flow Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-D Status Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm.74Table 8.9-D Reacet IPPV Support Resources.74Table 8.9-D Reacet IPPV Support Resources.74Table 8.9-D Reacet IPPV Support Object Syntax.74Table 8.10- | Table 8.8-O Tune Type Values | 74 |
| Table 8.8-R Inband Tuning Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-A Extended Channel Resource.74Table 8.9-B Extended Channel Resource.74Table 8.9-B Extended Channel Objects.74Table 8.9-D Service Type Values for New Flow Request.74Table 8.9-D Service Type Values for New Flow Request.74Table 8.9-E Status Field Values for New Flow Confirm.74Table 8.9-F Status Field Values for New Flow Confirm.74Table 8.9-F DOD Module DHCP Vendor Specific Information (Option 43) Sub-option Encoding.74Table 8.9-T POD Module DHCP Vendor Class Indentifier (Option 60) Encoding.74Table 8.9-T DOD Module DHCP Vendor Class Indentifier (Option 60) Encoding.74Table 8.9-T Dolete Flow Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-T Ne Reason Field Values for Lost Flow Indication.74Table 8.9-N Delete Flow Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-N Reason Field Values for Lost Flow Indication.74Table 8.9-N Reason Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm.74Table 8.9-D Lost Flow Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-D Lost Flow Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-D Lost FloW Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-S DSG macket error Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-S DSG packet error Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-D Grage Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-D Program Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-D Program Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-D Program Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-D Generic IPPV Support Object Syntax. </td <td>Table 8.8-P Tune Value</td> <td> 74</td> | Table 8.8-P Tune Value | 74 |
| Table 8.8-S Tune Status Values74Table 8.9-B Extended Channel Resource74Table 8.9-B Extended Channel Objects74Table 8.9-B Extended Channel Object Syntax74Table 8.9-C New Flow Request Object Syntax74Table 8.9-F Status Field Values for New Flow Request.74Table 8.9-F Status Field Values for New Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-F DD Module DHCP Vendor Specific Information (Option 43) Sub-option Encoding.74Table 8.9-H POD Module DHCP Vendor Specific Information (Option 43) Sub-option Encoding.74Table 8.9-H DD Module DHCP Vendor Specific Information (Option 60) Encoding.74Table 8.9-L Delete Flow Request Object Syntax74Table 8.9-L Dolete Flow Request Object Syntax74Table 8.9-L Nost Flow Indication Object Syntax74Table 8.9-L Nost Flow Indication Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Status Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-D Inquire DSG Mode Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Status Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-D Sig Dacket error Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Sig Dacket error Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Sig Dacket error Object Syntax74Table 8.9-S DSG packet error Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Regrine IPPV Support Resources74Table 8.10-C Program Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm74Table 8.10-C Program Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-F Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Typ | Table 8.8-Q Modulation Value | 74 |
| Table 8.9-A Extended Channel Resource.74Table 8.9-B Extended Channel Object S.74Table 8.9-C New Flow Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-C Status Field Values for New Flow Request.74Table 8.9-F Status Field Values for New Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-F Status Field Values for New Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-F DOD Module DHCP Vendor Specific Information (Option 43) Sub-option Encoding74Table 8.9-I POD Module DHCP Vendor Class Indentifier (Option 60) Encoding74Table 8.9-J Delete Flow Request Object Syntax74Table 8.9-J Delete Flow Request Object Syntax74Table 8.9-L Status Field for Delete Flow74Table 8.9-L Status Field for Delete Flow74Table 8.9-L Status Field for Delete Flow74Table 8.9-L Status Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-D Lost Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Status Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-D Status Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-D Status Field Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.9-D Status Field Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.9-D Brogram Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Generic IPPV Support Objects74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm | | |
| Table 8.9-A Extended Channel Resource.74Table 8.9-B Extended Channel Object S.74Table 8.9-C New Flow Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-C Status Field Values for New Flow Request.74Table 8.9-F Status Field Values for New Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-F Status Field Values for New Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-F DOD Module DHCP Vendor Specific Information (Option 43) Sub-option Encoding74Table 8.9-I POD Module DHCP Vendor Class Indentifier (Option 60) Encoding74Table 8.9-J Delete Flow Request Object Syntax74Table 8.9-J Delete Flow Request Object Syntax74Table 8.9-L Status Field for Delete Flow74Table 8.9-L Status Field for Delete Flow74Table 8.9-L Status Field for Delete Flow74Table 8.9-L Status Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-D Lost Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Status Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-D Status Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-D Status Field Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.9-D Status Field Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.9-D Brogram Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Generic IPPV Support Objects74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm | Table 8.8-S Tune Status Values | 74 |
| Table 8.9-C New Flow Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-D Service Type Values for New Flow Request.74Table 8.9-E New Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-G Flag field definitions74Table 8.9-H POD Module DHCP Vendor Specific Information (Option 43) Sub-option Encoding.74Table 8.9-H POD Module DHCP Vendor Class Indentifier (Option 60) Encoding74Table 8.9-J Delete Flow Request Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Letter Flow Request Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Letter Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Letter Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-M Lost Flow Indication Object Syntax74Table 8.9-M Lost Flow Indication Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Lost Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Lost Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Ioguire DSG Mode Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Ioguire DSG Mode Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Ioguire DSG Mode Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D SG packet_error Object Syntax74Table 8.10-B Generic IPPV Support Objects74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Forgram Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D | Table 8.9-A Extended Channel Resource | 74 |
| Table 8.9-D Service Type Values for New Flow Request.74Table 8.9-E New Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-G Flag field definitions74Table 8.9-G Flag field definitions74Table 8.9-H POD Module DHCP Vendor Specific Information (Option 43) Sub-option Encoding74Table 8.9-J Delete Flow Request Object Syntax74Table 8.9-J Delete Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-L Status Field for Delete Flow74Table 8.9-L Dest Flow Indication Object Syntax74Table 8.9-L Lost Flow Indication Object Syntax74Table 8.9-N Lost Flow Indication Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Lost Flow Indication Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Lost Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Iost Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Iost Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Status Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-D Sustas Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-D Sustas Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-D Sustas Field Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.9-D Sustas Field Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-A Generic IPPV Support Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-F Purchase Validation Value for Program Confirm <t< td=""><td>Table 8.9-B Extended Channel Objects</td><td> 74</td></t<> | Table 8.9-B Extended Channel Objects | 74 |
| Table 8.9-D Service Type Values for New Flow Request.74Table 8.9-E New Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-G Flag field definitions74Table 8.9-G Flag field definitions74Table 8.9-H POD Module DHCP Vendor Specific Information (Option 43) Sub-option Encoding74Table 8.9-J Delete Flow Request Object Syntax74Table 8.9-J Delete Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-L Status Field for Delete Flow74Table 8.9-L Dest Flow Indication Object Syntax74Table 8.9-L Lost Flow Indication Object Syntax74Table 8.9-N Lost Flow Indication Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Lost Flow Indication Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Lost Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Iost Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Iost Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Status Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-D Sustas Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-D Sustas Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-D Sustas Field Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.9-D Sustas Field Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-A Generic IPPV Support Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-F Purchase Validation Value for Program Confirm <t< td=""><td>Table 8.9-C New Flow Request Object Syntax</td><td> 74</td></t<> | Table 8.9-C New Flow Request Object Syntax | 74 |
| Table 8.9-E New Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-G Flag field definitions74Table 8.9-G Plag field definitions74Table 8.9-D POD Module DHCP Vendor Specific Information (Option 43) Sub-option Encoding74Table 8.9-I POD Module DHCP Vendor Class Indentifier (Option 60) Encoding74Table 8.9-D Delete Flow Request Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Delete Flow Request Object Syntax74Table 8.9-M Lost Flow Indication Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Lost Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Lost Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Lost Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Inquire DSG Mode Object Syntax74Table 8.9-Q Inquire DSG Mode Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Signaket_error Object Syntax74Table 8.9-B Signaket_error Object Syntax74Table 8.10-A Generic IPPV Support Objects74Table 8.10-B Generic IPPV Support Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Gregram Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Frogram Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Furchase Type Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-D Furc | | |
| Table 8.9-F Status Field Values for New Flow Confirm.74Table 8.9-H POD Module DHCP Vendor Specific Information (Option 43) Sub-option Encoding.74Table 8.9-I POD Module DHCP Vendor Class Indentifier (Option 60) Encoding.74Table 8.9-I Delete Flow Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-L Status Field for Delete Flow74Table 8.9-L Status Field for Delete Flow74Table 8.9-N Lost Flow Indication Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-N Lost Flow Indication Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-N Lost Flow Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-O Lost Flow Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-O Lost Flow Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-Q Inquire DSG Mode Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-R Set DSG Mode Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-R Set DSG Mode Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-S DSG packet_error Object Syntax.74Table 8.9-S DSG packet_error Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-A Generic IPPV Support Resources.74Table 8.10-C Program Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-F Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm.74Table 8.10-F Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm.74Table 8.10-F Purchase Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-F Purchase Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-F Purchase Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-H Purchase Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-H Cancel Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-H Cancel Request Object Syntax. <td></td> <td></td> | | |
| Table 8.9-GFlag field definitions74Table 8.9-HPOD Module DHCP Vendor Specific Information (Option 43) Sub-option Encoding.74Table 8.9-IPoD Module DHCP Vendor Class Indentifier (Option 60) Encoding74Table 8.9-J Delete Flow Request Object Syntax74Table 8.9-J Delete Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-L Status Field for Delete Flow74Table 8.9-M Lost Flow Indication Object Syntax74Table 8.9-N Reason Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-D Lost Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Lost Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Lost Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-Q Inquire DSG Mode Object Syntax74Table 8.9-R Set DSG Mode Object Syntax74Table 8.9-R Set DSG Mode Object Syntax74Table 8.9-B Song Dacket_error Object Syntax74Table 8.10-A Generic IPPV Support Resources74Table 8.10-B Generic IPPV Support Resources74Table 8.10-D Program Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-E Status Field Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-F Purchase Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-F Purchase Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-F Purchase Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-F Purchase Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-F Purchase Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-L Status Register for Program Con | | |
| Table 8.9-H POD Module DHCP Vendor Specific Information (Option 43) Sub-option Encoding | | |
| Table 8.9-1 POD Module DHCP Vendor Class Indentifier (Option 60) Encoding74Table 8.9-1 Delete Flow Request Object Syntax74Table 8.9-L Status Field for Delete Flow74Table 8.9-L Status Field for Delete Flow74Table 8.9-N Reason Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-D Status Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-D Status Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Lost Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Status Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-D Status Field Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-A Generic IPPV Support Resources74Table 8.10-B Generic IPPV Support Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-F Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Validation Value for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-I Purchase Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-I Purchase Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-I Purchase Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-L Status Field Values for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-L Status Field Values for Cancel Confi | | |
| Table 8.9-J Delete Flow Request Object Syntax74Table 8.9-K Delete Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-M Lost Flow Indication Object Syntax74Table 8.9-N Reason Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-N Reason Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-P Status Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-R Set DSG Mode Object Syntax74Table 8.9-R Stop Gacket_error Object Syntax74Table 8.10-A Generic IPPV Support Resources.74Table 8.10-B Generic IPPV Support Objects74Table 8.10-D Program Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-F Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Price for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-H Purchase Validation Value for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-H Purchase Validation Value for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-H Purchase Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-L Status Field Values for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-L Status Field Values for Cancel Confirm74Table 8.10-N Cancel Request | | |
| Table 8.9-K Delete Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-L Status Field for Delete Flow74Table 8.9-L Status Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-N Reason Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-D Lost Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-P Status Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-P Status Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-P Status Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-R Set DSG Mode Object Syntax74Table 8.9-S DSG packet error Object Syntax74Table 8.10-A Generic IPPV Support Resources.74Table 8.10-B Generic IPPV Support Objects74Table 8.10-C Program Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-F Purchase Trieg for Program Confirm.74Table 8.10-F Purchase Trieg for Program Confirm.74Table 8.10-G Purchase Price for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-I Purchase Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-I Purchase Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-L Status Field Values for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-L Status Field Values for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-N Cancel Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-N Status Field Values for Syntax74Ta | | |
| Table 8.9-L Status Field for Delete Flow74Table 8.9-M Lost Flow Indication Object Syntax74Table 8.9-N Reason Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-O Lost Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-D Status Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-D Sof Dacket error Object Syntax74Table 8.10-A Generic IPPV Support Resources.74Table 8.10-B Generic IPPV Support Objects74Table 8.10-B Generic IPPV Support Object Syntax74Table 8.10-C Program Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-E Status Field Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Prize for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-I Purchase Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-P His | | |
| Table 8.9-M Lost Flow Indication Object Syntax74Table 8.9-N Reason Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-N Status Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-P Status Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-R Set DSG Mode Object Syntax74Table 8.9-R Set DSG packet_error Object Syntax74Table 8.10-A Generic IPPV Support Resources74Table 8.10-B Generic IPPV Support Objects74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-E Status Field Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-G Purchase Price for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-I Purchase Validation Value for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-J Purchase Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-L Status Field Values for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-L Status Field Values for Cancel Confirm74Table 8.10-L Status Field Values for Cancel Confirm74Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-P History Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-P | | |
| Table 8.9-N Reason Field Values for Lost Flow Indication74Table 8.9-O Lost Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-O Inquire DSG Mode Object Syntax74Table 8.9-R Set DSG Mode Object Syntax74Table 8.9-S DSG packet_error Object Syntax74Table 8.9-S DSG packet_error Object Syntax74Table 8.10-A Generic IPPV Support Resources74Table 8.10-D Program Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Program Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-F Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Price for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-IP Purchase Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-IP Purchase Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-IP Purchase Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-IP Urchase Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-IP Urchase Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-IP Urchase Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-K Status Field Values for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-P History Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-P History Request Object Syntax | | |
| Table 8.9-O Lost Flow Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.9-P Status Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-Q Inquire DSG Mode Object Syntax74Table 8.9-R Set DSG Mode Object Syntax74Table 8.9-S DSG packet_error Object Syntax74Table 8.10-A Generic IPPV Support Resources74Table 8.10-B Generic IPPV Support Objects74Table 8.10-D Program Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-E Status Field Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Price for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-I Purchase Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-I Purchase Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-I Purchase Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-L Status Field Values for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-L Status Field Values for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-N Cancel Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-P History Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-P Katus Field Values for Cancel Confirm74Table 8.10-D Cancel Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Katus Field Values for Cancel Confirm74Table 8.10-P History Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-P Katus Field Values for Cancel Confirm74Table 8.10- | | |
| Table 8.9-P Status Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm74Table 8.9-Q Inquire DSG Mode Object Syntax74Table 8.9-R Set DSG Mode Object Syntax74Table 8.9-R St DSG packet_error Object Syntax74Table 8.10-A Generic IPPV Support Resources74Table 8.10-B Generic IPPV Support Objects74Table 8.10-B Generic IPPV Support Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Program Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-E Status Field Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Price for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Price for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-I Purchase Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-J Purchase Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-L Status Field Values for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-L Status Field Values for Cancel Confirm74Table 8.10-D Cancel Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Gatus Field Values for Cancel Confirm74Table 8.10-P History Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-P History Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-P Katus Field Values for Cancel Confirm74Table 8.10-P Histo | | |
| Table 8.9-Q Inquire DSG Mode Object Syntax74Table 8.9-R Set DSG packet_error Object Syntax74Table 8.9-S DSG packet_error Object Syntax74Table 8.10-A Generic IPPV Support Resources74Table 8.10-B Generic IPPV Support Objects74Table 8.10-C Program Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-E Status Field Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-H Purchase Validation Value for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-H Purchase Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-J Purchase Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-J Purchase Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-J Purchase Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-L Status Field Values for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-M Cancel Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-Q History Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-Q History Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-P History Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-Q History Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for Cancel Confirm74Table 8.10-Q History Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for History Confirm74Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for Hist | | |
| Table 8.9-R Set DSG Mode Object Syntax74Table 8.9-S DSG packet_error Object Syntax74Table 8.10-A Generic IPPV Support Resources.74Table 8.10-B Generic IPPV Support Objects74Table 8.10-C Program Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-E Status Field Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-E Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-G Purchase Price for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-H Purchase Validation Value for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-H Purchase Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-J Purchase Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-L Status Field Values for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-L Status Register for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-N Cancel Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-O Status Field Values for Cancel Confirm74Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-N Exture Field Values for Cancel Confirm74Table 8.10-P History Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-P History Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for History Confirm74Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for History Confirm74Table 8.11-A Specific Application Support Resource74Table 8.11-B Specific Application Support Resource74 <td< td=""><td></td><td></td></td<> | | |
| Table 8.9-S DSG packet_error Object Syntax74Table 8.10-A Generic IPPV Support Resources74Table 8.10-B Generic IPPV Support Objects74Table 8.10-B Generic IPPV Support Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Furgram Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-F Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Price for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-I Purchase Price for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-I Purchase Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-I Purchase Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-K Status Field Values for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-K Status Field Values for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-L Status Register for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-N Cancel Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-S Status Field Values for Cancel Confirm74Table 8.10-S Status Field Values for Cancel Confirm74Table 8.10-S Katus Field Values for Cancel Confirm74Table 8.10-S Katus Field Values for Cancel Confirm74Table 8.10-P History Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-P History Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.11-A Specific Application Support Resource74Table 8.11-A Specific Application Support Resource74Table 8.11-D sas_connect_rqst Object Syntax74Table 8.11-D sas_esonnect_cnf Object Syntax74 <tr< td=""><td></td><td></td></tr<> | | |
| Table 8.10-A Generic IPPV Support Resources.74Table 8.10-B Generic IPPV Support Objects74Table 8.10-B Generic IPPV Support Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-C Program Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-F Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm.74Table 8.10-F Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Price for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-G Purchase Price for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-I Purchase Validation Value for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-I Purchase Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-J Purchase Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-L Status Field Values for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-L Status Register for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-N Cancel Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-O Status Field Values for Cancel Confirm74Table 8.10-Q History Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-Q History Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-Q History Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for History Confirm74Table 8.11-A Specific Application Support Resource.74Table 8.11-C sas_connect_rqst Object Syntax.74Table 8.11-D sas_connect_rqst Object Syntax.74Table 8.11-D sas_connect_rqst Object Syntax.74Table 8.11-D sas_connect_rqst Object Syntax.74Table 8.11-D sas_connect_rqst Object Syntax.74 | | |
| Table 8.10-B Generic IPPV Support Objects74Table 8.10-C Program Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-E Status Field Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-G Purchase Price for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-I Purchase Validation Value for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-J Purchase Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-L Status Field Values for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-L Status Register for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-N Cancel Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-O Status Field Values for Cancel Confirm74Table 8.10-Q History Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-Q History Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for History Confirm74Table 8.10-Q History Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.11-A Specific Application Support Resource74Table 8.11-C sas_connect_rqst Object Syntax74Table 8.11-D sas_connect_rqst Object Syntax74Table 8.11-E sas_session_status74Table 8.11-E sas_session_status74 | | |
| Table 8.10-C Program Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-D Program Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-E Status Field Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-G Purchase Price for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-H Purchase Validation Value for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-I Purchase Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-J Purchase Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-J Purchase Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-L Status Field Values for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-K Status Field Values for Cancel Confirm74Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-O Status Field Values for Cancel Confirm74Table 8.10-P History Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-Q History Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for History Confirm74Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for History Confirm74Table 8.11-A Specific Application Support Objects74Table 8.11-B sas_connect_rqst Object Syntax74Table 8.11-D sas_connect_cnf Object Syntax74Table 8.11-E sas_session_status74 | | |
| Table 8.10-D Program Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-E Status Field Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-F Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-G Purchase Price for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-I Purchase Validation Value for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-I Purchase Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-J Purchase Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-J Purchase Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-L Status Field Values for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-K Status Field Values for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-K Status Field Values for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-K Status Field Values for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-N Cancel Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-O Status Field Values for Cancel Confirm74Table 8.10-P History Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-Q History Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for History Confirm74Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for History Confirm74Table 8.11-A Specific Application Support Resource74Table 8.11-C sas_connect_rqst Object Syntax74Table 8.11-D sas_connect_cnf Object Syntax74Table 8.11-E sas_session_status74 | | |
| Table 8.10-E Status Field Values for Program Confirm.74Table 8.10-F Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-G Purchase Price for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-H Purchase Validation Value for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-I Purchase Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-J Purchase Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-L Status Field Values for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-L Status Register for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-N Cancel Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-N Status Field Values for Cancel Confirm74Table 8.10-P History Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-P History Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for History Confirm74Table 8.11-A Specific Application Support Resource.74Table 8.11-B Specific Application Support Objects74Table 8.11-C sas_connect_rqst Object Syntax.74Table 8.11-D sas_connect_enf Object Syntax.74Table 8.11-E sas_session_status.74 | | |
| Table 8.10-F Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-G Purchase Price for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-H Purchase Validation Value for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-I Purchase Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-J Purchase Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-K Status Field Values for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-L Status Register for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-M Cancel Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-N Status Field Values for Cancel Confirm74Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-P History Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-P History Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for History Confirm74Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for History Confirm74Table 8.11-A Specific Application Support Resource74Table 8.11-B Specific Application Support Objects74Table 8.11-C sas_connect_rqst Object Syntax74Table 8.11-E sas_session_status74 | | |
| Table 8.10-G Purchase Price for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-H Purchase Validation Value for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-I Purchase Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-J Purchase Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-K Status Field Values for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-L Status Register for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-N Cancel Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-N Status Field Values for Cancel Confirm74Table 8.10-P History Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-P History Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for History Confirm74Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for History Confirm74Table 8.11-A Specific Application Support Resource.74Table 8.11-S sa_connect_rqst Object Syntax.74Table 8.11-D sas_connect_cnf Object Syntax.74Table 8.11-E sas_session_status.74 | | |
| Table 8.10-H Purchase Validation Value for Program Confirm74Table 8.10-I Purchase Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-J Purchase Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-K Status Field Values for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-L Status Register for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-L Status Register for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-N Cancel Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-D Status Field Values for Cancel Confirm74Table 8.10-P History Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-Q History Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for History Confirm74Table 8.11-A Specific Application Support Resource.74Table 8.11-B Specific Application Support Objects74Table 8.11-D sas_connect_rqst Object Syntax.74Table 8.11-D sas_session_status.74 | | |
| Table 8.10-I Purchase Request Object Syntax | | |
| Table 8.10-J Purchase Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-K Status Field Values for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-L Status Register for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-M Cancel Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-O Status Field Values for Cancel Confirm.74Table 8.10-P History Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-Q History Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for History Confirm74Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for History Confirm74Table 8.11-A Specific Application Support Resource.74Table 8.11-B Specific Application Support Objects74Table 8.11-D sas_connect_rqst Object Syntax.74Table 8.11-D sas_session_status.74 | | |
| Table 8.10-K Status Field Values for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-L Status Register for Purchase Confirm74Table 8.10-M Cancel Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-O Status Field Values for Cancel Confirm74Table 8.10-P History Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-Q History Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for History Confirm74Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for History Confirm74Table 8.11-A Specific Application Support Resource74Table 8.11-B Specific Application Support Objects74Table 8.11-D sas_connect_rqst Object Syntax74Table 8.11-E sas_session_status74 | | |
| Table 8.10-L Status Register for Purchase Confirm.74Table 8.10-M Cancel Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-O Status Field Values for Cancel Confirm.74Table 8.10-P History Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-Q History Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for History Confirm.74Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for History Confirm.74Table 8.11-A Specific Application Support Resource.74Table 8.11-B Specific Application Support Objects74Table 8.11-D sas_connect_rqst Object Syntax.74Table 8.11-E sas_session_status.74 | | |
| Table 8.10-M Cancel Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-O Status Field Values for Cancel Confirm.74Table 8.10-P History Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-Q History Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for History Confirm.74Table 8.11-A Specific Application Support Resource.74Table 8.11-B Specific Application Support Objects74Table 8.11-C sas_connect_rqst Object Syntax.74Table 8.11-D sas_connect_cnf Object Syntax.74Table 8.11-E sas_session_status.74 | | |
| Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-O Status Field Values for Cancel Confirm.74Table 8.10-P History Request Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-Q History Confirm Object Syntax.74Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for History Confirm.74Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for History Confirm.74Table 8.11-A Specific Application Support Resource.74Table 8.11-B Specific Application Support Objects74Table 8.11-C sas_connect_rqst Object Syntax.74Table 8.11-D sas_connect_cnf Object Syntax.74Table 8.11-E sas_session_status.74 | | |
| Table 8.10-O Status Field Values for Cancel Confirm74Table 8.10-P History Request Object Syntax74Table 8.10-Q History Confirm Object Syntax74Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for History Confirm74Table 8.11-A Specific Application Support Resource74Table 8.11-B Specific Application Support Objects74Table 8.11-C sas_connect_rqst Object Syntax74Table 8.11-D sas_connect_cnf Object Syntax74Table 8.11-E sas_session_status74 | | |
| Table 8.10-P History Request Object Syntax | Table 8.10-N Cancel Continuit Object Syntax | /4 |
| Table 8.10-Q History Confirm Object Syntax | | |
| Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for History Confirm74Table 8.11-A Specific Application Support Resource74Table 8.11-B Specific Application Support Objects74Table 8.11-C sas_connect_rqst Object Syntax74Table 8.11-D sas_connect_enf Object Syntax74Table 8.11-E sas_session_status74 | Table 8.10-P History Request Object Syntax | 74 |
| Table 8.11-A Specific Application Support Resource.74Table 8.11-B Specific Application Support Objects74Table 8.11-C sas_connect_rqst Object Syntax74Table 8.11-D sas_connect_cnf Object Syntax74Table 8.11-E sas_session_status74 | | |
| Table 8.11-B Specific Application Support Objects74Table 8.11-C sas_connect_rqst Object Syntax74Table 8.11-D sas_connect_cnf Object Syntax74Table 8.11-E sas_session_status74 | | |
| Table 8.11-C sas_connect_rqst Object Syntax 74 Table 8.11-D sas_connect_cnf Object Syntax 74 Table 8.11-E sas_session_status 74 | | |
| Table 8.11-D sas_connect_cnf Object Syntax 74 Table 8.11-E sas_session_status 74 | | |
| Table 8.11-E sas_session_status | Table 8.11-C sas_connect_rqst Object Syntax | /4 |
| | Table 8.11-D sas_connect_cnt Object Syntax | /4 |
| 1 aole 8.11-r sas_data_rqst Object Syntax /4 | | |
| | raule o.11-r sas_uala_iqsi Oujeel Syntax | /4 |

| Table 8.11-G sas_data_av Object Syntax | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Table 8.11-H sas_data_cnf Object Syntax | |
| Table 8.11-I sas_data_status | |
| Table 8.11-J sas_server_query Object Syntax | |
| Table 8.11-K sas_server_reply Object Syntax | |
| Table 8.12-A Generic Feature Control Resource | |
| Table 8.12-B Generic Feature IDs | |
| Table 8.12-C Generic Feature Control Objects Table 9.12 D France Line D | |
| Table 8.12-D Feature List Request Object Syntax Table 8.12 E Factore List Object Syntax | |
| Table 8.12-E Feature List Object Syntax Table 8.12 E Feature List Object Syntax | |
| Table 8.12-F Feature List Confirm Object Syntax Table 8.12 C Factors List Channel Object Syntax | |
| Table 8.12-G Feature List Changed Object Syntax | |
| Table 8.12-H Feature Parameter Request Object Syntax Table 8.12 I Feature Parameters Object Syntax | |
| Table 8.12-I Feature Parameters Object Syntax Table 8.12 I Feature Parameters Object Syntax | |
| Table 8.12-J Feature Parameters Confirm Object Syntax Table 8.12 K DE Outert Channel Parameters Sources | |
| Table 8.12-K RF Output Channel Parameters Syntax Table 8.12 L P | |
| Table 8.12-L Parental Control PIN Parameters | |
| Table 8.12-M Parental Control Settings Parameters | |
| Table 8.12-N IPPV PIN Parameters | |
| Table 8.12-O Time Zone Parameters. | |
| Table 8.12-P Daylight Savings Parameters | |
| Table 8.12-Q AC Outlet Parameters | |
| Table 8.12-R Language Parameters | |
| Table 8.12-S Rating Region Parameters | |
| Table 8.12-T Reset PIN | |
| Table 8.12-U Cable URLs | |
| Table 8.12-V Emergency Alert Location Code | |
| Table 8.13-A Homing Resource | |
| Table 8.13-B Homing Objects | |
| Table 8.13-C Open Homing Object Syntax | |
| Table 8.13-D Open Homing Reply Object Syntax | |
| Table 8.13-E Homing Active Object Syntax | |
| Table 8.13-F Homing Cancelled Object Syntax | |
| Table 8.13-G Homing Complete Object Syntax | |
| Table 8.13-H Firmware Upgrade Object Syntax | |
| Table 8.13-I Upgrade Sources | 74 |
| Table 8.13-J Timeout Types | |
| Table 8.13-K Firmware Upgrade Reply Object Syntax | |
| Table 8.13-L Firmware Upgrade Complete Object Syntax | 74 |
| Table 8.13-M Reset Request Status Values | |
| Table 8.14-A Generic Diagnostic Support Resource | |
| Table 8.14-B Generic Diagnostic Support Objects | 74 |
| Table 8.14-C Diagnostic Request Object Syntax | |
| Table 8.14-D Diagnostic ID Values | 74 |
| Table 8.14-E Diagnostic Confirm Object Syntax | |
| Table 8.14-F Status Field Values | 74 |
| Table 8.14-G Memory Report Syntax | 74 |
| Table 8.14-H Memory Type Values | |
| Table 8.14-I Software Version Report Syntax | |
| Table 8.14-J Software Status Flag Values | |
| Table 8.14-K Firmware Version Report Syntax | |
| Table 8.14-L MAC Address Report Syntax | |
| Table 8.14-M MAC Address Type Values | |
| Table 8.14-N FAT Status Report Syntax | |
| Table 8.14-O FDC Status Report Syntax | |
| Table 8.14-P FDC Center Frequency Value | |
| 1 5 | |

| Table 8.14-Q Current Channel Report Syntax | 74 |
|-------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Table 8.14-R 1394 Report Syntax | |
| Table 8.14-S DVI Status Report Syntax | 74 |
| Table 8.14-T HDMI Status Report Syntax | 74 |
| Table 8.15-A Code Version Download Table | 74 |
| Table 8.15-B Resource Identifier | 74 |
| Table 8.15-C Table of Application Protocol Data Units | 74 |
| Table 8.15-D host_info_request | 74 |
| Table 8.15-E host_info_response | 74 |
| Table 8.15-F code version table | 74 |
| Table 8.15-G code_version_table_reply | |
| Table 8.15-H host_download_control table | |
| Table 8.15-I host_download_command | 74 |
| Table A.1-A Table Downstream Data Paths | 74 |
| Table A.1-B Upstream Data Paths | 74 |
| Table C.3-A Keyword List | 74 |
| Table C.4-A Characters | |
| Table D.2-A CISTPL_LINKTARGET | 74 |
| Table D.2-B CISTPL_DEVICE_0A | 74 |
| Table D.2-C CISTPL_DEVICE_0C | |
| Table D.2-D CISTPL_VERS_1 | |
| Table D.2-E CISTPL_CONFIG | |
| Table D.2-F CCST_CIF | 74 |
| Table D.2-G CISTPL_CFTABLE_ENTRY | 74 |
| Table D.2-H CISTPL_END | |
| Table D.2-I Configuration Option Register | 74 |
| Table E.1-A Error Handling | 74 |
| | |

List of Figures

| Figure 4.2-1 System with Two-way Network | 15 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Figure 4.3-1 System with One-way Network | 16 |
| Figure 4.4-1 - System with DOCSIS Two-way Network | 17 |
| Figure 5.2-1 Flow Examples - QPSK Modem Case | 20 |
| Figure 5.3-1 Flow Examples - High Speed Host Modem Case | 21 |
| Figure 6.4-1 Host-POD Out-of-Band Interface | 29 |
| Figure 6.4-2. Phase States for Mapping ITX and QTX OK | 30 |
| Figure 6.4-3 POD Output Timing Diagram | |
| Figure 6.4-4 POD Input Timing Diagram | 33 |
| Figure 6.5-1 Modem-in-the-POD Module System Overview | 33 |
| Figure 6.5-2 Modem in-the-Host System View | 34 |
| Figure 6.5-3 Map of Hardware Interface Registers | 35 |
| Figure 6.7-1 POD RS Operation | |
| Figure 6.7-2 POD Personality Change Sequence | 42 |
| Figure 6.7-3 POD Module Interrupt Logical Operation | 49 |
| Figure 8.11-1 | 74 |
| Figure 8.11-2 | 74 |
| Figure 8.12-1 Generic Feature List Exchange | 74 |
| Figure 8.12-2 POD Module Feature List Change | 74 |
| Figure 8.12-3 Host Feature List Change | 74 |
| Figure 8.12-4 Host to POD Module Feature Parameters | 74 |
| Figure 8.12-5 Host Parameter Update | 74 |
| Figure 8.12-6 POD Module to Host Feature Parameters | 74 |
| Figure 8.13-1 Firmware Upgrade Flowchart | 74 |
| Figure 8.15-1 One-Way Operation | 74 |
| Figure 8.15-2 One-Way Operation – IB FAT Channel | 74 |
| Figure 8.15-3 Two-Way Operation | 74 |
| Figure 8.15-4 Two Way - Command Operation - IB FAT Channel | 74 |
| Figure 8.15-5 Two Way - Command Operation - IB FAT Channel (continued) | 74 |
| Figure 8.15-6 Two Way – On-Demand Operation - IB FAT Channel (continued) | 74 |
| Figure 8.15-7 Flow chart summarizing download operations | 74 |
| Figure 8.15-8 Flow chart summarizing download operations for OOB Forward Data Channel method | 74 |
| Figure 8.15-9 Flow chart summarizing broadcast download operations | 74 |
| Figure A.2-1 OOB TX Channel Available | |
| Figure A.3-1 High Speed Host Modem and OOB TX Channel Available | 74 |
| Figure A.3-2 High Speed Host Modem Available, OOB TX Channel Not Available | |
| Figure A.3-3 High Speed Host Modem Available, OOB TX Channel Not Available | 74 |
| Figure E.1-1 Error Display | 74 |

Host-POD Interface Specification

1 SCOPE

This standard defines the characteristics and normative specifications for the interface between Point of Deployment (POD) security modules owned and distributed by cable operators, and commercially available consumer receivers and set-top terminals ("Host devices") that are used to access multi-channel television programming carried on North American cable systems. The Point-of-Deployment module is also known as a CableCARD[™] device. These Host devices may also be supplied by the cable operators. The combination of a properly-authorized POD module and a Host device permits the unscrambled display of cable programming that is otherwise protected by a conditional access scrambling system.

This standard applies extensions, modifications, and constraints to the interface defined in CEA-679B Part B, the National Renewable Security Standard.

This standard supports a variety of conditional access scrambling systems. Entitlement management messages (EMMs) for such scrambling systems are carried in the cable out of band channel as defined by ANSI SCTE 55-1 2002 and ANSI/SCTE 55-2 2002. Other data transfer mechanisms such as the signaling methods of the DOCSIS version. 1.1 cable modem standard may be supported in the Host device. A cable operator is able to upgrade security in response to a breach by replacing the POD modules, without requiring any change in the host device.

The interface will support Emergency Alert messages transmitted over the out of band channel to the POD module and then delivered by the POD module over the interface to the host device using the format defined in SCTE 18 2002.

It may also support Interactive Program Guide services, Impulse Pay Per View services, Video on Demand, and other messaging and interactive services. It supports both one way and two way cable systems, as well as host devices that incorporate DOCSIS modems or telco modems.

This standard defines the physical interface, signal timing, the link interface, and the application interface. It includes the extended channel specification, power management specifications, initialization procedures and firmware upgrade methods.

2 OVERVIEW OF HOST-POD INTERFACE

2.1 Historical Perspective (INFORMATIVE)

This specification has its origins in CEA-679 (formerly EIA-679), the National Renewable Security Standard, which was initially adopted in September 1998. Part B of that standard has the physical size, shape and connector of the computer industry PCMCIA card, and also defines the interface protocols and stack. Part B of that standard was adopted by SCTE DVS as DVS/064.

Further extensions and modifications of EIA-679 led to the adoption of EIA-679-B in 2000. Independently, the cable industry prepared a modified version of DVS/064 which was submitted as DVS/131. Revision 7 of that document was adopted by SCTE DVS in early 1999 but never attained the status of a final standard because there were comments and objections that were never resolved.

Instead, the cable industry prepared a revised version that was submitted in January 2000 as DVS/295, incorporating many of the comments associated with DVS/131. Work on this document by the cable industry proceeded during the first half of 2000, leading to substantial changes that were embodied in DVS/295r1 (July 2000) and subsequent revisions in the open review process.

2.2 Advanced Cable Services (INFORMATIVE)

The POD Module interface specification is designed to support advanced digital cable services by a digital television receiver when a POD Module is inserted.

In this case, "Advanced Digital Cable Services" would include support of the following functions:

- Emergency Alert System
- Interactive Program Guide
- Impulse Pay-Per-View (IPPV)
- Video On Demand (VOD)
- General Messaging
- Interactive Services

2.2.1 Interactive Program Guide (IPG)

The Host may support an Interactive Program Guide (IPG) to enable the user to navigate to available services. The services supported by the IPG may include basic channel, premium channels, and Impulse Pay-Per-View (IPPV) events. Program

guide data may be delivered to the application by means of the in-band (QAM) channel and/or by means of the out-of-band (QPSK) channel:

- In-band transmission of program and system information typically describes only the digital multiplex in which it is sent. This means that a single-tuner Host must periodically scan through all channels to receive data for each channel and store this information in memory.
- Optionally, at the discretion of the cable operator, the out-of-band channel may be used to deliver guide data. The format of this information over the OOB channel will be defined by the cable operator and may be used to support specific IPG implementations. The Host receives data from the POD that is sent on the out-of-band channel and delivered over the *Extended Channel* described in Section 5. The guide data typically describes the entire range of services offered by the cable system.

2.2.2 Impulse Pay-Per-View (IPPV)

The Host may support the purchase of Impulse Pay-Per-View (IPPV) events. IPPV processing is split as follows:

- All security related and billing functions are in the POD Module.
- All user-interface functions are in the Host.

The IPPV API is specified by "Generic IPPV Support" in section 8.10 and covers all common functions related to (1) IPPV purchase (2) IPPV cancel (3) IPPV purchase review.

2.2.3 Video-on-Demand (VOD)

Video-on-Demand (VOD) may be modeled as an IPPV event where the program stream is dedicated to an individual subscriber. The VOD application executes in the Host and supports all of the User Interface (UI) functions.

The additional streaming media control functions (i.e. Pause, Play, Fast-Forward, Rewind) may be supported using DSM-CC User-to-User messages. The *Extended Channel* described in Section 5 may be used as the communication path for VOD signaling, and may also be used for VOD event purchases. After a VOD control session is established via the session creation interface, UDP messages may be exchanged transparently between the Host and the cable system. RFC 1831, 1832 & 1833 may be used as the underlying RPC mechanism for the exchange of DSM-CC UU.

2.2.4 Interactive services

Interactive Services may be supported by applications executing on the Host, for example, an email or game application. To advertise interactive services, a mechanism is required to deliver information about applications to the Host and the

protocols described in ANSI/SCTE 80 2002 may be used for this purpose. Typically, information about interactive services are not associated with a streaming media service, so information about them is delivered via the out-of-band channel. The service information is passed to the Host via the *Extended Channel* resource when the POD Module serves as the OOB modem.

The *Extended Channel* may also be used as the communication path for interactive service signaling when the POD Module is serving as the OOB modem. After an interactive service session is established via the session creation interface, UDP messages may be exchanged transparently between the Host and the cable system. RFC 1831, 1832 & 1833 may be used as the underlying RPC mechanism for the exchange of application level messages.

2.3 References

2.3.1 Normative references

The following standards contain provisions that, through reference in this text, constitute normative provisions of this Specification. At the time of publication, the editions indicated are current. All standards are subject to revision, and parties to agreements based on this Specification are encouraged to investigate the possibility of applying for the most recent editions of the standards listed in this section.

Normative reference list

1. CEA-679-C Part B: National Renewable Security Standard (July 2005)

2. ANSI/SCTE 55-2 2002 (formerly DVS 167), Digital Broadband Delivery System: Out Of Band Transport – Mode B

3. ANSI/SCTE 55-1 2002 (formerly DVS 178), Digital Broadband Delivery System: Out Of Band Transport – Mode A

4. SCTE 18 2002 (formerly DVS 208), Emergency Alert Message for Cable, approved as a joint standard with CEA as ANSI-J-STD-042-2002

5. ANSI/SCTE 65 2002 (formerly DVS 234), Service Information Delivered Outof-Band for Digital Cable Television (28 March, 2000)

6. ANSI/SCTE 54 2004, Digital Video Service Multiplex and Transport System Standard for Cable Television

7. ISO/IEC 13818-6:1998 (E) Information Technology: Generic coding of moving pictures and associated audio information. Part 6: Extension for DSM-CC

8. ISO 8859-1: 8-Bit Single-Byte Coded Graphic Character Sets - Part 1: Latin Alphabet No. 1, revised 1987

9. PC Card Standard, Volume 2 Electrical Specification, March 1997, Personal Computer Memory Card International Association, Sunnyvale, CA.

10. PC Card Standard, Volume 4 Metaformat Specification, 2001, Personal Computer Memory Card International Association, Sunnyvale, CA

11. RFC 2131, Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol, March 1997.

12. RFC 2132, DHCP Options and BOOTP Vendor Extensions, March 1997.

13. PC Card Standard, Volume 3 Physical Specification, Release 7, February 1999, Personal Computer Memory Card International Association, Sunnyvale, CA.

14. ANSI/SCTE 41 2004, POD Copy Protection System

15. HTML 3.2 Reference Specification: http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-html32.html

16. Hypertext Transfer Protocol – HTTP/1.1: http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2616.txt?number=2616

17. SCTE 23-2 2002, Data-Over-Cable Systems 1.1, Baseline Privacy Plus Interface Specification,

18. DOCSIS Set-top Gateway (DSG) Interface Specification, CM-SP-DSG-I08-060728

19. ANSI/SCTE 90-1 2004 SCTE Applications Platform Part 1: OCAP 1.0 Profile

Normative reference acquisition

ANSI/CEA Standards:

• American National Standards Institute, Customer Service, 11 West 42nd Street, New York, NY 10036; Telephone 212-642-4900; Facsimile: 212-302-1286; E-mail: sales@ansi.org; URL:http://www.ansi.org

CEA Standards: United States of America

 Global Engineering Documents, World Headquarters, 15 Inverness Way East, Englewood, CO USA 80112-5776; Telephone 800-854-7179; Facsimile: 303-397-2740; E-mail: global@ihs.commailto:global@ihs.com; URL: http://global.ihs.com

SCTE Standards: United States of America

Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers Inc., 140 Philips Road, Exton, PA 19341; Telephone 800-542-5040; Facsimile: 610-363-5898; E-mail: standards@scte.org;URL: http://www.scte.org

ITU Standards:

 ITU Sales and Marketing Service, International Telecommunication Union, Place des Nations CH-1211, Geneva 20, Switzerland; Telephone: +41 22 730 6141; Facsimile: +41 22 730 5194; E-mail: sales@itu.int; URL: ">http://www.itu.org>

ISO/IEC Standards:

- Global Engineering Documents, World Headquarters, 15 Inverness Way East, Englewood, CO 80112-5776, USA; Telephone: 800-854-7179; Facsimile: 303-397-2740; E-mail: global@ihs.commailto:global@ihs.com; URL: http://global.ihs.com
- Internet Specifications: The Internet Engineering Task Force, IETF Secretariat, c/o Corporation for National Research Initiatives, 1895 Preston White Drive, Suite 100, Reston, VA 20101-5434; Telephone 703-620-8990; Facsimile 703-620-9071; E-mail: ietf-secretariat@ietf.org; URL: http://www.ietf.org/rfc

PC Card Standards:

• Personal Computer Memory Card International Association, 2635 North First Street, Suite 209, San Jose, CA 95134, (Tel) +408-433-CARD (2273), (Fax) +408-433-9558, (Email) office@pcmcia.org

DOCSIS and OpenCable Specifications:

 Cable Television Laboratories, Inc., 858 Coal Creek Circle, Louisville, CO 80027-9750; URLs: <u>http://cablelabs.com/</u>, <u>http://www.cablemodem.com/</u>, <u>http://www.opencable.com/</u>

2.3.2 Informative references

The following documents contain information that is useful in understanding of this Specification. Some of these documents are drafts of standards or balloted standards with unresolved comments.

Informative document list

1. OC-SP-CD-IF-I08-040831 OpenCable Common Download Specification

2. Data-Over-Cable Service Interface Specifications, Radio Frequency Interface Specification, SP-RFIv1.1-I10-030730.

3. Data-Over-Cable Service Interface Specifications, Radio Frequency Interface Specification, SP-RFIv2.0-I07-041210

4. Data-Over-Cable Service Interface Specifications, Operations Support System Interface Specification, ANSI/SCTE 23-3 2005.

5. Data-Over-Cable Service Interface Specifications, Operations Support System Interface Specification, SP-OSSIv2.0-I07-041210

Informative document acquisition

Same as listed under Normative reference acquisition.

3 CEA 679 PART B COMPLIANCE

3.1 Exceptions to Compliance

In all aspects not covered in this document, the POD Module interface requires complete CEA-679-Part C compliance with the following exceptions:

| | Table 3.1-A CEA 679 Part B Compliance Exceptions | | | |
|------|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| ltem | Section | Issue | Comment | |
| 1 | 4.1 | Second paragraph states "It also allows for multiple instance of CA processes to exist for the same Host." | SCTE 28 supports only one POD Module per POD/Host Interface. | |
| 2 | 4.1 | Third paragraph is a description of handling multiple modules. | SCTE 28 supports only one POD Module per POD/Host Interface | |
| 3 | 5.3 | First paragraph states "This functionality includes: the ability to support multiple modules on one host, ". | SCTE 28 supports only one POD Module per POD/Host Interface | |
| 4 | 5.4.1 | Item 5 of the requirements and limits list is "5) use of multiple modules". | SCTE 28 supports only one POD Module per POD/Host Interface | |
| 5 | 5.4.2 | Item 3 of the transport stream interface restrictions regarding the use of the word contiguous. | Packets arrive synchronously with clock but not necessarily continuously | |
| 6 | 5.4.2 | Item 5 of the transport stream interface specifies the maximum data rate of 58 Mbps | Section 6.1.1 specifies rates around 27 and 39 Mbps. | |
| 7 | 5.4.2 | Maximum jitter is not defined in the document. | Defined in Section 6.1.1 | |
| 8 | 5.4.4 | Entire paragraph is about multiple modules. | SCTE 28 supports only one POD Module per POD/Host Interface | |
| 9 | 5.5 | First paragraph sentence contains " and indicates to the host that it is a NRSS-conformant module." | "NRSS-conformant module" should be changed to a POD module. | |

| | Table 3.1-A CEA 679 Part B Compliance Exceptions | | | | |
|------|--------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|
| Item | Section | Issue | Comment | | |
| 10 | 7.2.4 | Item 2 of the SPDU list states "a conditional body of variable length which contains an integer number of APDUs belonging to the same session (see application layer)." | Section 8.1 limits the number of APDUs in an SPDU to one. | | |
| 11 | 7.2.6 | " which is always followed by a SPDU body containing one or several APDUs." | Section 8.1 limits the number of APDUs in an SPDU to one. | | |
| 12 | 8.2.1 | First paragraph contains "Resources with higher version number shall be backwards compatible with previous versions, so that applications requesting a previous version will have a resource with expected behavior. | All resources that are defined in CEA-679-C that are modified in SCTE 28 should have a different type value or version number. | | |
| 13 | 8.4.1.1 | First paragraph contains "When a module is plugged in or the host is powered up one or perhaps two transport connections are created to the module,". | Section 8.1 limits the number of transport connections to one. | | |
| 14 | 8.4.2 | Entire section. | Section 8.4 replaces this entire section. | | |
| 15 | 8.5 | Entire section. | Section 8.8 of SCTE 28 replaces Section 8.5 of CEA 679B Part B except for Section 8.5.2 which remains. | | |
| 16 | 8.6 | Entire section | Section 8.3 replaces this entire section. | | |
| 17 | 8.7 | Entire section. | Section 8.5 modifies this operation. | | |
| 18 | 8.8 | Entire section. | Section 8.13 replaces this entire section. | | |
| 19 | 8.9 | Entire section. | This entire section is replaced by ANSI/SCTE 41 2001 | | |
| 20 | 8.10 | Entire section. | SCTE 28 does not require this resource. | | |
| 21 | 8.11 | Table 87 & 91 | Table 87 is replaced by Table 3.1-B and Table 91 is replaced by Table 3.1-C. | | |
| 22 | 8.11 | EIA-679-B Part B contained two sections numbered 8.11. This was corrected in CEA-679-C Part B, where they are now numbered 8.11 and 8.12. The Section formerly numbered 8.12 in EIA-679-B Part B has been renumbered 8.13 in CEA-679-C Part B. | | | |

| Table 3.1-A CEA 679 Part B Compliance Exceptions | | | |
|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ltem | Section | Issue | Comment |
| 23 | 8.12.2 | Host Control sections | Host Control operation in Sections 8.12.1 and 8.12.2 of CEA-679-C is replaced by Section 8.8. |
| 24 | 8.12.3- 8.12.6 | Extended Channel Support | These sections of CEA-679-C Part B are replaced by Sections 5 and 8.9 |
| 25 | 8.13 | Entire section | Section 8.13 of CEA-679-C is replaced by Section 8.10. |
| 26 | A.2.2.1 | Status register description. | IIR flag and operation description is given in Section 6.5.2 of SCTE 28. |
| 27 | A.4.1.3 | Entire section | Removed by section 6.7.6. |
| 28 | A.5.5.1 | "Hosts shall support 5V working and may optionally support 3.3V working." | Section 6.1.2 specifically states that the POD module is only implemented as a 3.3V device. |
| 29 | A.5.5.2 | Table 119 | MCLKO has been moved from pin 57 to pin 14. Pin 14 is shared with A14 and becomes an I/O. Pin 57 shall be VS2# always. Pin 11 Address 9 is also DRX. Pin 12 Address 8 is also CRX. Pin 22 Address 7 is also QTX. It is also changed to an I/O. Pin 23 Address 6 is also ETX. It is also changed to an I/O. Pin 24 Address 5 is also ITX. It is also changed to an I/O. Pin 25 Address 4 is also CTX, |
| 30 | A.5.5.10 | Item 1 of the power management features list: "Except in standby mode, " | POD Standby mode is not defined in SCTE 28. |
| 31 | A.5.5.10 | Item 2 of the power management features list. | Section 6.1.2 modifies this to 1 amp. |
| 32 | A.5.5.10 | Item 4 of the power management features list. | Section 6.1.2 modifies this to 250 ma on Vpp. |
| 33 | A.5.6 | Item 5 of the metaformat list regarding ID number. | Section 6.1.1 changes this to 0341h. |

| | Table 3.1-A CEA 679 Part B Compliance Exceptions | | | |
|------|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| ltem | Section | Issue | Comment | |
| 34 | A.5.6 | Item 5 of the metaformat list lists STCI_STR as "NRSS_CI_V1.00". | Section 6.2 changes this to "OPENCABLE_POD_ MODULE". | |
| 35 | A.5.6 | Item 7 of the metaformat list lists system name as "NRSS_HOST" | Change this to "OPENCABLE_ HOST" | |
| 36 | A.5.6 | Item 8 of the metaformat list lists physical device name as "NRSS CI MODULE". | Section 6.2 changes this to "OPENCABLE_POD_ MODULE". | |
| 37 | A.5.6 | CISTPL_LINKTARGET is not included. | Section 6.3 requires this tuple per PCMCIA recommendations. | |
| 38 | В | Entire appendix | Should be replaced by appendix C. | |
| 39 | C.1 | Entire section | SCTE 28 does not support this resource. | |
| 40 | C.2 | Entire section | SCTE 28 does not support this resource. | |
| 41 | C.3 | Entire section | SCTE 28 does not support this resource. | |
| 42 | D | Entire section | Homing operation is modified by Section 8.13. | |
| 43 | Е | Entire section. | SCTE 28 supports only one POD Module per POD/Host Interface | |
| 44 | F | Entire section | SCTE 28 does not require smart-card resource. | |
| 45 | A.2.1.2.2- A.2.2.2 | Single buffer implementation | SCTE 28 does not support a single buffer implementation in the POD. | |

- The requirement of section 7.2.6.1 of CEA-679-C Part B that the Host or POD module must support earlier versions of a resource shall only apply to versions of resources described in this specification.
- Transport layer timeout period shall be modified from 300 ms to 5 seconds.
- Hardware Interface Description The term "command register" is used erroneously. It shall therefore be referred to as "Control Register."
- The requirement of Section 8.3.3 of CEA-679-C Part B to support an integer number of APDUs in a body of a single SPDU shall be changed to only a single APDU shall be supported in the body of a SPDU.
- The requirement of Section 8.4.3.5 of CEA-679-B Part B that the POD shall implement its CA application such that when ca_enable is present in ca_pmt_reply()

both at program level and elementary stream level, only the ca_enable at ES level applies for that elementary stream shall be applicable to a POD in a network that support different authorization at program level and elementary stream level.

- NOTE: Section 8.4.3.5 of CEA-679-C Part B states that the CA PMT Reply "may" also be sent after reception of a CA PMT object. Implementors should be aware that sending a CA_PMT object to the POD with ca_pmt_cmd_id set to 'ok_mmi' is not guaranteed to return a response.
- Products compliant with this specification shall provide a double buffer implementation. The single buffer implementation permitted by CEA-679-C shall not be used.

| Resource | class | type | Version | resource identifier |
|----------------------------|-------|------|---------|---------------------|
| Resource Manager | 1 | 1 | 1 | 00010041 |
| Application Information | 2 | 2 | 1 | 00020081 |
| Conditional Access Support | 3 | 1 | 2 | 00030042 |
| Host Control | 32 | 1 | 3 | 00200043 |
| System Time | 36 | 1 | 1 | 00240041 |
| MMI | 64 | 2 | 1 | 00400081 |
| Low Speed Communication | 96 | ** | 2 | 0060xxx2 |
| Homing | 17 | 1 | 2 | 00110042 |
| Copy Protection | 176 | 3 | 1 | 00B000C1 |
| Specific Application | 144 | 1 | 1 | 00900041 |
| Generic Feature | 42 | 1 | 1 | 002A0041 |
| Extended Channel | 160 | 1 | 1 | 00A00041 |
| Generic IPPV Support | 128 | 2 | 1 | 00800081 |

Table 3.1-B Replacement for CEA-679-C Table 87 Resource Identifier Values

** - See section 8.5 for details.

Table 3.1-C Replacement for CEA-679-C Table 91Application Object Tag Values

| apdu_tag | tag value (hex) | Resource | Direction |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------|------------------|-------------------|
| | | | Host ↔ POD |
| T _{profile inq} | 9F 80 10 | Resource Manager | \leftrightarrow |
| T _{profile} reply | 9F 80 11 | Resource Manager | \leftrightarrow |
| Tprofile changed | 9F 80 12 | Resource Manager | \leftrightarrow |
| T _{application} info req | 9F 80 20 | Application Info | \rightarrow |
| T _{application} info cnf | 9F 80 21 | Application Info | \leftarrow |
| T _{server query} | 9F 80 22 | Application Info | \rightarrow |
| T _{server reply} | 9F 80 23 | Application Info | \leftarrow |
| T _{ca info inq**} | 9F 80 30 | CA Support | \rightarrow |
| T _{ca info**} | 9F 80 31 | CA Support | \leftarrow |

| apdu_tag | tag value (hex) | Resource | Direction Host ↔ POD |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <u> </u> | 9F 80 32 | CA Support | |
| T _{ca pmt} ** | 9F 80 32 | CA Support | → ← |
| T _{ca pmt reply**} | 9F 80 34 | CA Support | ← |
| T _{ca update} | 9F 84 04 | Host Control | ← |
| T _{OOB TX tune req} | 9F 84 04 9F 84 05 | Host Control | \rightarrow |
| T _{OOB TX tune cnf} | 9F 84 06 | Host Control | → ← |
| T _{OOB RX} tune req | 9F 84 07 | Host Control | \rightarrow |
| T _{OOB RX tune cnf} | 9F 84 08 | Host Control | |
| Tinband tune | 9F 84 09 | Host Control | \rightarrow |
| Tinband tune cnf | 9F 84 42 | System Time | |
| T _{system time inq**} | 9F 84 42 9F 84 43 | | → 、 |
| T _{system time**} | 9F 84 43 9F 88 20 | System Time MMI | \rightarrow |
| T _{open mmi req} | 9F 88 20 9F 88 21 | MMI | → ```````````````````````````````````` |
| T _{open mmi cnf} | | | \rightarrow |
| T _{close mmi req} | 9F 88 22 | MMI | <i>~</i> |
| T _{close mmi cnf} | 9F 88 23 | MMI | \rightarrow |
| T _{comms cmd} | 9F 8C 00 | Low speed comms. | \leftarrow |
| T _{connection descriptor} | 9F 8C 01 | Low speed comms. | \leftarrow |
| T _{comms reply} | 9F 8C 02 | Low speed comms. | \rightarrow |
| T _{comms} send last | 9F 8C 03 | Low speed comms. | <i>←</i> |
| T _{comms send more} | 9F 8C 04 | Low speed comms. | <i>←</i> |
| T _{comms} rev last | 9F 8C 05 | Low speed comms. | \rightarrow |
| T _{comms} rcv more | 9F 8C 06 | Low speed comms. | \rightarrow |
| T _{new flow req} | 9F 8E 00 | Extended Channel | \leftrightarrow^* |
| T _{new flow cnf} | 9F 8E 01 | Extended Channel | \leftrightarrow^* |
| T _{delete flow req} | 9F 8E 02 | Extended Channel | \leftrightarrow^* |
| T _{delete} flow cnf | 9F 8E 03 | Extended Channel | \leftrightarrow^* |
| T _{lost flow ind} | 9F 8E 04 | Extended Channel | \leftrightarrow^* |
| T _{lost flow cnf} | 9F 8E 05 | Extended Channel | \leftrightarrow^* |
| T _{program req} | 9F 8F 00 | Generic IPPV Support | \rightarrow |
| T _{program cnf} | 9F 8F 01 | Generic IPPV Support | \leftarrow |
| T _{purchase req} | 9F 8F 02 | Generic IPPV Support | \rightarrow |
| T _{purchase cnf} | 9F 8F 03 | Generic IPPV Support | \leftarrow |
| T _{cancel req} | 9F 8F 04 | Generic IPPV Support | \rightarrow |
| T _{cancel cnf} | 9F 8F 05 | Generic IPPV Support | \leftarrow |
| T _{history req} | 9F 8F 06 | Generic IPPV Support | \rightarrow |
| Thistory cnf | 9F 8F 07 | Generic IPPV Support | \leftarrow |
| T _{feature list req} | 9F 98 02 | Generic Feature Control | \leftrightarrow |
| T _{feature list} | 9F 98 03 | Generic Feature Control | \leftrightarrow |
| T _{feature list cnf} | 9F 98 04 | Generic Feature Control | \leftrightarrow |
| T _{feature} list changed | 9F 98 05 | Generic Feature Control | \leftrightarrow |
| T _{feature} parameters req | 9F 98 06 | Generic Feature Control | \leftrightarrow |
| T _{feature} parameters | 9F 98 07 | Generic Feature Control | \leftrightarrow |
| T _{feature} parameters cnf | 9F 98 08 | Generic Feature Control | \leftrightarrow |
| T _{open homing} | 9F 99 90 | Homing | \rightarrow |
| T _{homing} cancelled | 9F 99 91 | Homing | \rightarrow |
| T _{open homing reply} | 9F 99 92 | Homing | ← |

Table 3 1-C Replacement for CEA-679-C Table 91

| Table 3.1-C Replacement for CEA-679-C Table 91Application Object Tag Values | | | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|----------|----------------------------------------------|--|
| apdu_tag | tag value (hex) | Resource | Direction | |
| | | | $\textbf{Host} \leftrightarrow \textbf{POD}$ | |
| Thoming active | 9F 99 93 | Homing | \rightarrow | |
| Thoming complete | 9F 99 94 | Homing | ← | |
| T _{firmware} upgrade | 9F 99 95 | Homing | ← | |
| T _{firmware} upgrade reply | 9F 99 96 | Homing | \rightarrow | |
| T _{firmware} upgrade complete | | | | |

* - Direction depends on if Host has modem. See section 8.9.

** These values are copied directly from Table 91 of CEA-679-C Part B and do not appear explicitly in this document.

4 SYSTEM ARCHITECTURE (INFORMATIVE)

4.1 Introduction

At the subscriber premises, a reception system includes a cable navigation device, or Host, and a POD Module. This combination allows the isolation of cable operator hardware specifics into a renewable POD Module and therefore provides the architectural foundation for retail availability of cable navigation devices. The POD Module interface consists of a standardized:

- Bi-directional access to the Out-Of-Band RF Front End, or alternatively access to forward Out-Of-Band Messaging supplied by one or more DSG Tunnels via the DOCSIS Set-top Gateway (DSG) [2]
- In-band MPEG-2 Transport Stream input and output, and
- CPU interface.

The Host-POD Interface will operate in one of two modes, a mode using SCTE 55-1 or SCTE 55-2 OOB channels (the OOB mode), or a mode that uses the DOCSIS Settop Gateway (DSG) for the forward OOB messaging and the normal DOCSIS IP channel for return traffic (the DSG mode).

In the first mode of operation, the signaling functions are split between the Host and the POD Module such that only the RF processing and QPSK demodulation and modulation are done in the Host. The Advanced Host will operate in either of these two modes, OOB or DSG, based on network configurations. All other Hosts will operate in the OOB mode.

The remainder of the processing, including all of the Data-link and MAC protocols, is implemented in the POD Module. This split was chosen for the following reasons:

- SCTE 55-1 and SCTE 55-2 use common modulation (QPSK), but in all other respects are quite different. Only the parts of the protocol stack common to both OOB schemes are included in the Host.
- Future development of OOB protocols should not be precluded. By placing the majority of the OOB processing in the POD Module, the OOB can be renewed at a future time by replacement of the POD Module.
- It is important to the cable operator that the reverse (upstream) transmissions from any device are correctly controlled, because a single uncontrolled device can impair a significant portion of the shared access network. By implementing the media access control processing in the POD Module, the cable operator can maintain the integrity of the access network.
- All processing of conditional access messages is done in the POD Module. This approach is taken to protect from theft-of-service attacks.

In the DSG mode of operation, all of the Data-link and MAC level protocols are implemented in the embedded DOCSIS cable modem in the Host. In this case the POD is not responsible for implementing these protocols, since they are provided via the embedded DOCSIS cable modem. The OOB messaging in this case is transported as follows:

- The forward OOB messaging is transported via one or more DSG Tunnels to the Host
- The Host filters the IP packets on the DSG Tunnels identified by the Ethernet MAC addresses specified by the POD.
- The Host optionally removes the IP headers of these packets as instructed by the POD (the POD specifies the number of bytes to be removed from the header of the IP packet).
- The resulting data packets are transmitted over the extended channel to the POD module.

The POD Module can be used in a number of different networks, as described in the sections below.

4.2 **Two-way Networks**

Figure 4.2-1 gives a schematic view of the system when the cable network includes an OOB return Data Channel based on ANSI/SCTE 55-1 2002 or ANSI/SCTE 55-2 2002.



Figure 4.2-1 System with Two-way Network

The QPSK receiver circuit in the Host tunes and demodulates the QPSK Forward Data Channel (FDC). The receiver circuit adapts to the 1.544/3.088 Mbps or 2.048 Mbps FDC bit rate, and delivers the serial bit-stream and clock to the POD Module. (This serial data is used primarily to send conditional access entitlement management messages from the cable system to the POD Module. These messages are beyond the scope of this standard.)

Tuning of the QPSK receiver circuit is under control of the POD Module, as explained in Section 8.8.2. The tuning range is between 70 and 130 MHz.

In the return path, the POD Module generates QPSK symbols and clock and transfers them to the QPSK transmitter circuit in the Host. The transmitter circuit adapts to the 1.544/3.088 Mbps or 0.256 Mbps RDC bit rate. The QPSK transmitter circuit modulates the QPSK symbols onto a narrow band carrier.

Tuning and level control of the QPSK transmitter are under control of the POD Module as explained in Section 8.8.1. The tuning range is between 5 MHz and 42 MHz .

4.3 One-way Networks

The configuration shown in Figure 4.3-1 applies where there is a no return channel.

The QPSK transmitter in the Host is not active (and it is therefore omitted from the diagram). The receiver circuit operates in the same manner as described in Section 8.8.

An optional telephone modem may be used in one-way networks to allow limited interactive services. In this case, the standard telephone modem is incorporated into the Host.

The Host may opt to allow the POD to have access to the telephone modem. In the event that the Host permits the POD to have access to the telephone modem, the POD Module may access the telephone modem via the Low Speed Communications Resource defined in CEA 679-C Part B. Support of the Low Speed Communication Resource as defined in CEA 679-C Part B is optional.



Figure 4.3-1 System with One-way Network

After POD Module initialization, the Host informs the POD Module about the available Low Speed Communication resources as defined by CEA-679-C Part B (see the Reference List in the Informative Annex). Then, when the POD Module requires setting up a connection with the cable headend, datagrams are sent to the telephone modem via the CPU interface as defined by CEA-679-C Part B.

4.4 **Two-way Networks with DOCSIS**

The configuration shown in Figure 4.4-1 applies where a DOCSIS capability exists in the Host.



Figure 4.4-1 - System with DOCSIS Two-way Network

In this configuration a single upstream transmit path is shared between the POD Module and the DOCSIS modem. In order to prevent conflict between the DOCSIS upstream and the OOB upstream the system will operate in one of two modes.

- OOB mode The downstream Conditional Access Messages and network management messages will be delivered to the POD Module via the QPSK receive interface on the POD Module using, e.g., SCTE 55-1, SCTE 55-2, or other agreed OOB specification. The upstream Conditional Access Messages and network management messages will be transmitted from the POD Module via the QPSK transmit interface on the POD Module using, e.g., SCTE 55-1, SCTE 55-2, or other agreed OOB specification.
- DSG mode The downstream Conditional Access Messages and network management messages will be delivered to the POD Module by the Extended Channel using the DSG Service_type using the DOCSIS downstream in

accordance with the DOCSIS Set-top Gateway (DSG) Specification [1]. The upstream Conditional Access Messages and network management messages will be transmitted from the POD module via IP over the DOCSIS upstream channel using the Extended Channel. The DOCSIS bi-directional channel can be used by any applications running in the Host, simultaneously with the POD module's communication with the headend via the Extended Channel using DOCSIS. The use of the Extended Channel by the POD module for IP flows does not change DSG usage of the DSG Service_type on the Extended Channel.

The mode used is based on whether the DOCSIS Set-top Gateway is supported by the network. The POD informs the Host which of these modes is to be used as detailed later in this specification.

5 EXTENDED CHANNEL DATA FLOWS

5.1 Internet Protocol Flows (Informative)

The Extended Channel supports delivery of IP packets across the POD interface. Both unicast (point to point) and multicast (point to multipoint) addressing shall be supported by this protocol. If the Host is in OOB mode, then the POD module shall service the IP flow via utilization of the Host's RDC and shall supply the Host with an IP address. On request of a "new flow request" from the Host, the POD Module shall respond to the request to open the flow by obtaining an IP address for use by the Host. That IP address shall be returned in the "new flow confirmation" message. Informative Note: The POD is not required to grant a request for service type IP Unicast when requested by the Host.

In DSG mode, the Card resides at the Network Layer and the Host shall utilize its eCM to provide the Data Link Layer to the underlying DOCSIS network. When the Card wishes to utilize the DOCSIS network to transfer IP datagrams upstream, it shall first submit a "new flow request" to the Host to establish an IP flow to transfer datagrams between the Card and the Host's eCM interface. The Card shall submit its MAC address in its request to the Host for an IP flow.

If the Host grants the new IP flow request, then the Host shall utilizes DHCP to acquire an IP address for the Card, and shall send this information, along with the DOCSIS maximum transmission unit (MTU) (1500 bytes for IP datagrams) to the Card in a new flow confirmation. The Host shall then open an IP flow to the Card over the Extended Data Channel.

The Host shall utilize the MAC address provided in the Card's IP flow request to filter Ethernet frames from the eCM that are intended for the Card. The Host shall extract all unicast IP datagrams from Ethernet frames addressed to the CableCARD's MAC address and shall forward them over the Extended Data Channel to the CableCARD.

The Host shall utilize the Extended Data Channel's IP flow to forward IP datagrams it receives over the eCM interface on behalf of the Card. The Host shall not forward the Card any datagrams received over other interfaces (e.g. Ethernet port, USB port, etc.).

The Host shall forward all IP datagrams received from the Card to the eCM interface. The Host shall not forward any IP datagrams received from the Card to any other interface, including but not limited to: IEEE-1394, Ethernet, USB, 802.11a/b/g/n/x, Multimedia Over Coax Alliance (MoCA), etc. The Host shall resolve the destination MAC address of the IP datagrams that it receives from the Card and shall apply the appropriate MAC addresses to the Ethernet frames it sends upstream. If an established IP type of flow becomes unavailable for any reason, the device that has granted the flow shall report that fact to the one that has requested the flow. The "lost flow indication" transaction shall be used to report this type of event. One example case where a flow may become unavailable is due to a change in the state of the eCM that may have resulted from a change via SNMP to the eCM's operational state.

5.2 Flow Examples—QPSK Modem Case (Informative)

Figure 5.2-1 diagrams a POD-Host interface in which four flows have been set up. In this example case, the POD provides a full-duplex modem function for the benefit of the Host (as well as itself).

The rounded rectangle boxes represent applications. In this example, the Host has a Navigation application that receives Service Information data on the Extended Channel via the POD interface (#1). The Host has opened up three flows to receive MPEG data from the POD, and has supplied different PID values for filtering for each. The navigation function (#1) uses two SI flows in the example, and another application (#2) uses the third flow. The Host also has a web browser application (#3) and a Video On Demand (VOD) application (#4).

In Figure 5.2-1, the types of services that the POD is required to support are shown with black arrows. As shown in the figure, three flows delivering MPEG table sections are required. Flows that may be available at the option of the supplier of the POD are shaded gray. In the figure, the POD supports an IP flow, but a compliant POD can choose not to support the IP service type.



Figure 5.2-1 Flow Examples - QPSK Modem Case

The POD includes two applications of its own. The Conditional Access process (#5) receives data via downstream QPSK. The POD includes a pay-per-view reportback function (#6).

Note that none of these POD applications use flows that travel across the POD interface.

5.3 Flow Examples— High Speed Host Modem Case DSG Mode

In the next example case, the Host includes a High Speed Host Modem. Figure 5.3-1 diagrams a POD-Host interface in which five flows have been set up. When a Host includes a High Speed Host Modem, the Host is required to support at least one flow of service type IP Unicast (IP_U). As before, the POD must support three MPEG section flows if the Host requests them.



Figure 5.3-1 Flow Examples - High Speed Host Modem Case

In this example, the Host has a web browser application (#1), some application that uses multicast addressed packets (#2) and a Navigation application (#3) that receives Service Information data on the Extended Channel via the POD interface via three separate flows.

The Navigation application can open three different simultaneous flows, specifying different PID values for each. For example, it might set one to the base PID that carries SI network data including the Master Guide Table, Virtual Channel Table and System Time. It can set a second one to point to a PID value where Event Information Tables for a specific time slot may be found, and another to collect associated Extended Text Tables (ETTs).

The POD includes three applications of its own. The Host routes IP packets to the POD applications based on IP address. For unicast packets, those that match the IP address assigned to the POD will be routed across the interface. For multicast

packets, those matching the multicast group address associated with a particular flow will be delivered.

The POD includes a pay-per-view reportback function (#5) that uses standard IP packets for data transport. Finally, the POD includes some application (#6) that has registered with the Host to receive multicast-addressed IP packets through the Host modem.

5.4 Summary of Extended Channel Flow Requirement (Normative)

Compliance with this standard requires Host and POD devices to support certain flows. Other types of flows may be supported at the discretion of the Host or POD. The following table summarizes the requirements.

| Table 5.4-A Flow Requirements | | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------|--|
| Requestor | Data Direction | Service Type | Number of Concurrent Flows | |
| Host | $POD \rightarrow Host$ | MPEG section | 6 or more | |
| If Host implements High Speed Host Modem or if OCAP is supported: | | | | |
| POD | $Host \leftrightarrow POD$ | IP Unicast | At least 1 | |
| If Host implements DSG: | | | | |
| POD | $Host \rightarrow POD$ | DSG | 1 | |

5.5 System/Service Information Requirements (Normative)

The POD module shall supply System and Service Information across the HOST-POD interface, using *Service_type MPEG*_section, as defined in Section 8.9.1 and ANSI/SCTE 65 2002. The set of MPEG-2 tables provided to support the navigation function in the terminal device shall conform to one or more of the profiles specified in ANSI/SCTE 65 2002.

Note: 1 (Informative) Profiles 1 through 5 are compatible with terminal devices deployed as of Jan 1, 2000. Terminal devices that are intended to be portable across the US will need to function with any of the six profiles of ANSI/SCTE 65 2002. For operational considerations of various profiles, see section A.3 in ANSI/SCTE 65 2002

5.6 Emergency Alert Requirements (Normative)

The POD module may receive Emergency Alert messaging on either the FAT channels or the Out-of-Band Forward Data channel (OOB FDC). The EAS message syntax is compatible with MPEG-2 transport and is defined in SCTE 18 2002. For

FAT channel transmission, the EAS message shall appear in transport packets with the same PID as those used for Service/System Information (SI) and shall be transmitted by the POD to the HOST. The table ID for the EAS message is 0xD8 as defined in SCTE 18 2002. For out-of-band (OOB) transmission, EAS messages shall be processed by the POD module and shall be transmitted over the Extended Channel according to SCTE 18 2002.

6 PHYSICAL INTERFACE (NORMATIVE)

6.1 PC Card Compliance

6.1.1 POD Module Port Custom Interface (0341h)

The POD Module interface is registered to the PC Card Standard as the POD Module Custom Interface with the interface ID number (STCI_IFN) allocated to equal hexadecimal 341. In case the Host is not capable of operating with the POD Module, the Host shall ignore the POD Module.

The POD Module shall present the 16-bit PC Card memory-only interface following the application of VCC or the RESET signal. When operating in this configuration, D7-D0 are retained as a byte-oriented I/O port, and the capability to read the Attribute Memory is retained.

Only two address lines are required for four Bytes of register space. Pin CE2# is assigned to select the Extended Channel function required for the POD Module CPU interface to enable the access to the Extended Channel resource. Pin IOIS16# is never asserted.

The Host-POD interface shall be required to support transport stream interface data rates of 26.97035 Mb/s and 38.81070 Mb/s averaged over the period between the sync bytes of successive transport packets with allowable jitter of +/- one MCLKI clock period.

6.1.2 Power Management

In order to remain compliant with the PC Card standard and to simplify the Host and POD Module implementations, and regardless of the powering state of the Host (i.e., active or standby), the following power management features are required.

- The Host shall permanently supply 3.3V on the VCC pins. The Host shall be capable of supplying up to a maximum of 1 amp total on the VCC pins (500 ma each) at 3.3 VDC per POD Module supported.
- The Host shall supply 5V on the VPP pins if requested by the POD Module Card Information Structure. The Host shall be capable of supplying up to 250 ma total on the VPP pins (125 ma each) at 5 VDC per POD Module supported.

- The Host shall continuously supply 3.3V on the VPP pins upon Host power-up and also when a POD module is not installed. When a POD module or a PC Card is installed, if the voltage sense pins are set as required per the Host-POD Interface Specification, the Host shall supply 5 V on the VPP pins only if requested by the POD Module Card Information Structure. Otherwise, the Host shall continue to supply 3.3 V on the VPP pins while the POD module/PC Card is installed. Upon removal of a POD module or a PC Card, the Host shall revert to or continue to supply 3.3V on the VPP pins. The Host shall be capable of supplying up to 250 ma total on the VPP pins (125 ma each) at 5 VDC per POD module supported.
- The Host shall not be required to support the separate nominal voltage parameter descriptors in the power descriptor structures for VPP1 and/or VPP2.
- The POD module shall only support the value of 0x2 in the Power field of the Feature Selection Byte (TPCE_FS) and the associated parameter descriptor according to section 3.3.2.3 of PC Card Standard, Volume 4 if the POD module requires a switched nominal voltage level of +5V on the VPP lines.
- There is no standby power mode for the POD module.
- The POD Module shall draw no more than 2.5 watts averaged over a period of 10 seconds.
- The Host OOB Receive circuitry must continue to operate in all powering states of the Host.
- The Host shall support hot insertion and removal of the POD Module.
- The POD Module shall implement the mechanical Low Voltage Keying.
- The POD Module shall force VS1 (pin 43) to ground and VS2 (pin 57) to high impedance until it switches to the POD Module Custom Interface mode.
- The POD Module shall support 3.3V hot insertion.
- The POD module does not have to meet the requirement of section 4.12.2 of the PCMCIA Electrical Specification to limit its average current to 70 mA prior to the POD Personality Change (writing to the Configuration Option Register).

6.1.3 Pin Assignment

The following table shows the function of various PC Card signals when the POD Module Port custom interface mode is set to active in the Host.

Differences between CEA-679-C Part B and this Host-POD Interface Specification affect the A4 to A9 signals, which are now assigned to the OOB RF I/Os, and CE2#, which is used to access the Extended Channel. The MCLKO is provided on pin 14 to be fully PC Card compliant. This is a modification from CEA-679-C (Part B). Pin 57
remains the PC Card VS2# signal. Shaded entries in Table 6.1-A highlight the differences between CEA-679-C Part B and this specification.

| Pin | Signal | I/O | Comment | Pin | Signal | I/O | Comment |
|-----|---------|-----|-------------|-----|---------|-----|-----------------|
| | GND | DC | Ground | 35 | GND | | Ground |
| | D3 | I/O | | 36 | CD1# | 0 | |
| | D4 | I/O | | 37 | MDO3 | I/O | (D11) |
| 1 | D5 | I/O | | 38 | MDO4 | I/O | (D12) |
| 5 | D6 | I/O | | 39 | MDO5 | I/O | (D13) |
| 6 | D7 | I/O | | 40 | MDO6 | I/O | (D14) |
| 7 | CE1# | Ι | | 41 | MDO7 | I/O | (D15) |
| 8 | A10 | Ι | | 42 | CE2# | Ι | Extended Channe |
| 9 | OE# | Ι | | 43 | VS1# | 0 | |
| 10 | A11 | Ι | | 44 | IORD# | Ι | (RFU) |
| 11 | DRX | Ι | (A9) | 45 | IOWR# | Ι | (RFU) |
| 12 | CRX | Ι | (A8) | 46 | MISTRT | Ι | (A17) |
| 13 | A13 | Ι | | 47 | MDI0 | Ι | (A18) |
| 14 | MCLKO | I/O | (A14) | 48 | MDI1 | Ι | (A19) |
| 15 | WE# | Ι | | 49 | MDI2 | Ι | (A20) |
| 16 | IREQ# | 0 | (READY) | 50 | MDI3 | Ι | (A21) |
| 17 | VCC | DC | 3.3V | 51 | VCC | DC | 3.3V |
| 18 | VPP-1 | DC | Switched 5V | 52 | VPP-2 | DC | Switched 5V |
| 19 | MIVAL | Ι | (A16) | 53 | MDI4 | Ι | (A22) |
| 20 | MCLKI | Ι | (A15) | 54 | MDI5 | Ι | (A23) |
| 21 | A12 | Ι | | 55 | MDI6 | Ι | (A24) |
| 22 | QTX | I/O | (A7) | 56 | MDI7 | Ι | (A25) |
| 23 | ETX | I/O | (A6) | 57 | VS2# | 0 | |
| 24 | ITX | I/O | (A5) | 58 | RESET | Ι | |
| 25 | CTX | Ι | (A4) | 59 | WAIT# | 0 | |
| 26 | A3 | Ι | | 60 | INPACK# | 0 | |
| 27 | A2 | Ι | | 61 | REG# | Ι | |
| 28 | A1 | Ι | | 62 | MOVAL | 0 | (BVD2) |
| 29 | A0 | Ι | | 63 | MOSTRT | 0 | (BVD1) |
| 30 | D0 | I/O | | 64 | MDO0 | I/O | (D8) |
| 31 | D1 | I/O | | 65 | MDO1 | I/O | (D9) |
| 32 | D2 | I/O | | 66 | MDO2 | I/O | (D10) |
| 33 | IOIS16# | 0 | (WP) | 67 | CD2# | 0 | |
| 34 | GND | DC | Ground | 68 | GND | DC | Ground |

Table C 4 A DO Card Circul Definition

Note: "I" indicates signal is input to POD Module, "O" indicates signal is output from POD Module

6.2 POD Module Identification

The Host has two different ways to recognize a POD Module: (1) at the application level, using the Application Info CEA-679-C Part B resource, or (2) at the physical level as defined by PCMCIA.

In PCMCIA memory mode, the Host accesses the POD Module's Attribute Memory to read the Card Information Structure (CIS) on the even addresses (first byte at address 000h, second byte at address 002h, etc.). Since the POD Module interface is a PC Card Custom Interface the CIS must include a custom interface subtuple (CCST_CIF) that provides the interface ID number (STCI_IFN) defined by PCMCIA (hex341).

For a more explicit identification, the CIS also includes in the tuple CISTPL_VER_1, the field name of the product of subtuple TPLLV1_INFO defined as "OPENCABLE_POD_MODULE".

This information in the CIS is mandatory to ensure backup operation in case of trouble when the CI stack is lost (e.g., power shut down, POD Module extraction).

6.3 Card Information Structure

The Card Information Structure (CIS) shall be readable whenever the SCTE POD module is powered, the SCTE POD module has been reset by the Host in accordance with section 4.12.1 of Volume 2, "Electrical Specification" of the PC Card Standard, the SCTE POD module is asserting the READY signal, and the POD Personality Change has not occurred. The CIS contains the information needed by the Host to verify that a POD module has been installed. After the POD Personality Change, the CIS shall no longer be available.

The following table is the minimum set of tuples required for the POD Module.

| Table 6.3-A CIS Minimum Set of Tuples |
|---------------------------------------|
| CISTPL_LINKTARGET |
| CISTPL_DEVICE_0A |
| CISTPL_DEVICE_0C |
| CISTPL_VERS_1 |
| CISTPL_MANFID |
| CISTPL_CONFIG |
| CISTPL_CFTABLE_ENTRY |
| CISTPL_NO_LINK |
| CISTPL_END |

6.4 Host-POD OOB Interface

This standard requires support for OOB signaling. This signaling is provided in one of two modes, Out of Band (OOB) Mode and DOCSIS Settop Gateway (DSG) Mode:

6.4.1 Out of Band (OOB) Mode

• The Host RF front-end specification provides the QPSK physical layer to support OOB (downstream and upstream) communications according to SCTE 55-1 or SCTE 55-2. The data link and media access control protocols for SCTE 55-1 or SCTE 55-2 are implemented in the POD Module.

The interface data rates are:

- Forward Receiver: 1.544/3.088 Mbps and 2.048 Mbps
- Reverse Transmitter: 772/1544 Ksymbol/s and 128 Ksymbol/s (i.e., 1.544/3.088 Mbps and 256 Kbps)

The transmit and receive interfaces for the Host-POD OOB Interface are shown in Figure 6.4-1 below. The receiver interface comprises a serial bit stream and a clock, while the transmitter interface comprises I and Q data, a symbol clock, and a transmit-enable signal. The clock signal should be transferred from the Host to the POD, as shown in Figure 6.4-1.



Figure 6.4-1 Host-POD Out-of-Band Interface

The interface symbols are defined below.

| Table 6.4-A Transmission Signals for Host-POD Interface | | | | | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------------|------|--|--|--|
| Signal | Definition | Rates | Туре | | | |
| DRX | RX Data | 1.544/3.088 and 2.048 Mbps | Ι | | | |
| CRX | RX Gapped Clock | 1.544/3.088 and 2.048 MHz | Ι | | | |
| ITX | TX I Channel | 772/1544 and 128 Ksymbol/s | 0 | | | |
| QTX | TX Q Channel | 772/1544 and 128 Ksymbol/s | 0 | | | |
| ETX | TX Enable | [n/a] | 0 | | | |
| СТХ | TX Gapped Symbol Clock | 772/1544 and 128 KHz | Ι | | | |

1. DRX/CRX

DRX – The DRX data directly from the Host FDC QPSK receiver.

CRX – Gapped clock is a clock signal in which some of the clock cycles are missing, creating an artificial gap in the clock pattern. The clock rate is one of 1.544, 3.088 or 2.048 MHz

- 2. ITX, QTX Differential encoding shall take place within the POD module. The Host shall map ITX,QTX directly to the phase states shown in Figure 5.4-3 below.
- 3. ETX ETX is an output from the POD Module and an input to the Host. It is defined to be active high. When ETX is inactive, the values of ITX and QTX are not valid and the upstream transmitter shall not transmit such values. When ETX is active, the values of ITX and QTX are both valid and the upstream transmitter shall transmit these values.



Figure 6.4-2. Phase States for Mapping ITX and QTX OK

6.4.2 DOCSIS Settop Gateway (DSG Mode

The Host DOCSIS cable modem provides the physical, data link, and media access control protocols. Unlike the OOB mode, the data link and media access control protocols for SCTE 55-1 or SCTE 55-2 are bypassed in the POD Module. The downstream communications are implemented in accordance with the DOCSIS Settop Gateway (DSG) Specification. The upstream Conditional Access Messages and network management messages will be transmitted from the POD Module via IP over the DOCSIS upstream channel using the Extended Channel.

The interface data rates are:

- o Downstream direction: 2.048 Mbps
- o Upstream direction: Limited by DOCSIS return channel capacity

The first two bytes of the frame are the total number of bytes following in the frame, i.e. they do not include this two-byte length field. There is no CRC check required on

the frame, as the interface between the Host and POD is reliable. It is the responsibility of the POD vendor to implement error detection in the DSG encapsulated data. The POD should disregard any invalid packets received from the Host. The Host must provide buffer space for a minimum of two DSG IP packets, one for transmission to the POD and one for receiving from the DOCSIS channel. Informational note: The DSG rate limits the aggregate data rate to 2.048 Mbps to avoid buffer overflow. Figure 5.4-2 below shows how the DSG packets are transported across the POD/Host interface with and without removal of the header bytes. Prior to transmission across the POD/Host interface, the CRC of the DSG packet received from the eCM is removed, then optionally header bytes may be removed in order from the Ethernet header through the IP header and the UDP header resulting in the removal of X header bytes where X is defined by the POD as per the remove header bytes of the set dsg mode() APDU (note that X may be zero, thus no header bytes are removed). A two byte field containing the DSG byte count of the resulting data payload is prepended to the remaining frame and transmitted across the POD/Host interface.



Figure 6.4-3. DSG Packet Format Across POD/Host Interface

6.4.3 Timing and Voltage Parameters

All POD signal requirements and timing requirements shall comply with Table 6.4-B and Figures 6.4-2 and 6.4-3, and shall be measured with no less than the maximum load of the receiver as defined in table 4-19 of [10].

The PC Card A7, A6, and A5 pin definitions have been modified to QTX, ETX, and ITX. These pins will be driven by the POD and will have Data Signal characteristics per table 4-19 of [10]. Additionally, the signals MOVAL and MOSTRT will be driven by the POD and will have Data Signal characteristics per table 4-19 of [10]. The remaining signals follow the signal type assignments as listed in table 4-19 of [10].

| Table 6.4-B POD Signal Parameters | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------|------|-----|------|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| Parameter | Signal | Unit | Min | Туре | Мах | Conditions | |
| Frequency | CTX | kHz | | | 3088 | | |
| Frequency | CRX | kHz | | | 3088 | | |
| Hold (T _{HCTX}) | CTX | ns | 250 | | | Note 1,2 | |
| Hold (T _{HCRX}) | CRX | ns | 250 | | | Note 1,2 | |
| Delay (t _D) | ETX, ITX, QTX | ns | 5 | | 180 | Note 1,2 | |
| Set-up (Tsu) | DRX | ns | 10 | | | From time signal reaches 90% of high level (rising) or 10% of high level (falling) until CRX mid-point transition | |
| Hold (Th) | DRX | ns | 5 | | | From CRX mid-point transition until signal reaches 10% of high level (rising) or 90% of high level (falling) | |

All signal voltage levels are compatible with normal 3.3V CMOS levels.

Note1: Refer to Figure 6.4-2 POD Return Data Channel Timing Diagram.

Note2: AC Timing is measured with Input/Output Timing Reference level at 1.5V.







Figure 6.4-4 POD Input Timing Diagram

6.5 CPU Interface

With OOB traffic included, the POD Module requires more bandwidth and connections on the CPU Interface than are supported by the Data Channel alone. Two communication paths shall share the same pins on the PC Card connector.

Data Channel – This channel is compliant with the Command Interface protocol of CEA-679-C Part B, plus the interrupt mode extension. POD Module applications shall use this path when they require support from Host resources.

Extended Channel – This second communication only includes physical and link layers. The purpose of the *Extended Channel* is to provide a communication path between the POD Module and the Host such that applications in one (e.g. Host, POD Module) can communicate with the headend via a link layer or modem function in the other (POD Module, Host respectively). Whereas the content and format of the messages for the *Data Channel* are well defined, the content and format of the messages for the *Extended Channel* are application specific.

Depending on whether the POD Module or the Host is acting as the modem (or link device), the *Extended Channel* has a reversible function as described in figure 6.5-1 and figure 6.5-2.



Figure 6.5-1 Modem-in-the-POD Module System Overview



Figure 6.5-2 Modem in-the-Host System View

When the *Data Channel* is physically activated by CE1# (Card Enable 1) as defined by CEA-679-C Part B, the *Extended Channel* is enabled by CE2# (Card Enable 2), which is not used by CEA-679-C Part B.

The *Extended Channel* includes the same type of registers as defined by CEA-679-C Part B for the Command Interface. The POD Module enables access to the *Extended Channel* after the initialization phase. At this time, the CE2# signal interpretation begins, and the Extended hardware interface registers can be read and written. The signals mentioned in the table below are all inputs for the POD Module. The registers depicted in figure 6.5-3 are part of the POD Module.

| Table 6.5-A Extended Interface Registers | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------------------------|------|------|------|----|----|-------|-------|--|
| Extended Interface Reg. | REG# | CE2# | CE1# | A1 | A0 | IORD# | IOWR# | |
| Standby mode | Х | Н | Н | Х | Х | Х | Х | |
| Ext_Data Write | L | L | Н | L | L | Н | L | |
| Ext_Data Read | L | L | Н | L | L | L | Н | |
| Ext_Command Write | L | L | Н | L | Н | Н | L | |
| Ext_Status_Reg. Read | L | L | Н | L | Н | L | Н | |
| Ext_Size (LS) Write | L | L | Н | Н | L | Н | L | |
| Ext_Size (LS) Read | L | L | Н | Н | L | L | Н | |
| Ext_Size (MS) Write | L | L | Н | Н | Н | Н | L | |
| Ext_Size (MS) Read | L | L | Н | Н | Н | L | Н | |

The *Extended Channel* has its own data buffer that may have a different size than the *Data Channel* buffer.

Since there are two physical channels (data channel and extended channel), the behavior of the interface is defined in such a way that when the Host sets the RS_flag on either channel, the interface is reset for both channels. Therefore, if the Host sets an RS_flag after detection of an error condition, it should set the RS-flag for both channels.



Figure 6.5-3 Map of Hardware Interface Registers

6.5.1 Control Register Modification

The following extension to the CEA-679-C Part B Command Interface shall be used in order to facilitate the interrupt mode over the *Data Channel* and the *Extended Channel*.

The DA & FR bits of the Status Register should be gated onto the IREQ# line by two new Interrupt Enable bits for the Control Register: DAIE (bit 7) and FRIE (bit 6) respectively. The Control register now becomes:

| | Table 6.5-B Control Register Definitions | | | | | | | | |
|-----|------------------------------------------|------|---|---|----|----|----|----|--|
| Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | |
| | DAIE | FRIE | R | R | RS | SR | SW | HC | |

RS, SR, SW and HC retain their function, as described in CEA-679-C Part B specification.

When set, DAIE allows any assertion of the DA bit in the Status register also to assert IREQ#.

When set, FRIE allows any assertion of the FR bit in the Status register also to assert IREQ#.

When IREQ# is asserted, the Host shall first check the data channel, and then the extended channel to determine the source of the interrupt.

6.5.2 Status Register Modification

The following extension to CEA-679-C Part B Status Interface shall be used in order to allow the POD to request the initialization process to occur. A new status bit called the Initialize Interface Request (IIR) is added to bit 4 of the Status Register to allow the POD Module to request that the interface be re-initialized. This bit exists in both the data channel and extended channel. When the POD module sets the IIR flag, the POD must also reset the IIR flag when the RS flag is set.

| | Table 6.5-C Status Register Definitions | | | | | | | | |
|-----|-----------------------------------------|----|---|-----|---|---|----|----|--|
| bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | |
| | DA | FR | R | IIR | R | R | WE | RE | |

6.6 Copy Protection on the FAT Channel

Copy protection shall be provided for 'high value' content delivered in MPEG transport streams flowing from the POD to the Host. Such protection, including scrambling of content from POD to Host and authenticated delivery of messages through the CPU interface for permitted use of 'high value' content, is defined in the POD Copy Protection System specification (see ANSI/SCTE 41 2001).

6.7 Host-POD Interface Initialization

This section defines the interface initialization procedure between the POD module and the Host.

6.7.1 Descriptions

Initialization is a very general term. The following are definitions of the how the term initialization is used in this section.

6.7.1.1 Interface Initialization Definition (Informative)

Any computing device must go through an initialization phase whenever a reset condition occurs, such as when initial power is applied, manual reset, or an unrecoverable software error condition occurs. What is covered in this section is the initialization of the interface between the host and the POD module. This is defined to be the *interface initialization*.

6.7.1.2 POD Personality Change Definition (Informative)

The host and POD module shall initialize to the PCMCIA interface and will, at a particular point in the sequence, change to the POD interface. This point is defined as the *POD Personality Change*.

6.7.1.3 Reset Definition

There are two possible resets that can occur in the POD interface, a hard reset (called PCMCIA reset) and a soft reset (called POD reset).

6.7.1.3.1 PCMCIA Reset

The PCMCIA reset is defined to be one in which the Host shall bring the RESET signal to the POD module active. The interface shall revert to the PCMCIA interface including no longer routing the MPEG data stream through the POD module. Obviously this will cause problems to the viewer and should be avoided except in the case that a catastrophic failure has occurred in the POD module or in the interface between the Host and the POD module.

6.7.1.3.2 POD Reset

The POD reset is defined to be when Host sets the RS bit in the control register anytime after the POD personality change has occurred. The Host shall set the RS bit in both the data channel and extended channel. The POD module shall detect whether the RS bit has been set in either channel and, if so, shall close all open sessions and transport connections and operation shall revert to that of just after the POD personality change. This reset shall prevent the change of routing of the MPEG data stream, thereby preventing the viewer from noticing any problems unless the video/audio stream being viewed is scrambled. Since the conditional access session is closed, the POD module shall cease descrambling the data stream until a new session is opened and the appropriate APDU transmitted to the POD module.

The POD reset should occur when the Host detects an error in the POD module interface or the POD module has set the IIR flag (see below).

6.7.1.3.3 Initialize Interface Request Flag

A status bit called the **Initialize Interface Request** (**IIR**) flag is included in bit 4 of the status register to allow the POD module to request that the interface be reinitialized. This bit exists in both the data channel and extended channel. When a condition occurs that the POD module needs to request an interface initialization, it shall set both IIR bits. Upon recognition of the IIR flag being set, the Host shall implement a POD reset. The POD module will clear the IIR flag when the RS bit is set. To further ensure reliable interoperability, POD modules shall be prohibited from sending LPDUs to the Host after setting the IIR bit and prior to recognizing an active RS bit.

6.7.1.3.4 Detailed POD Reset Operation

The following flowchart (POD Reset Sequence) is the required implementation of the POD RS operation. LPDUs shall not be transmitted until the completion of the POD Reset sequence.



Figure 6.7-1 POD RS Operation

6.7.2 Configuration Option Register (Normative)

The Configuration Option Register (COR) in the POD module is only accessible prior to the POD Personality Change (see appendix D.2). After the POD personality change, the COR is no longer available. Any relevant configuration data must be transferred via the data or extended channels and is not covered in this document.

By writing the COR with the value defined by the Configuration-Table index byte, TPCE_INDX, from the CISTPL_CFTABLE_ENTRY tuple, the Host configures the module into the POD mode, thus causing the POD Personality Change.

6.7.3 Initialization Conditions

There are 4 possible conditions that can cause the PCMCIA interface initialization phase. Please see section 6.7.4 of this document for detailed operation. They are:

1. The Host and POD module are powered up at the same time. After both have performed their internal initialization, then the interface initialization will begin.

2. Host has been powered and in a steady state. A POD module is then inserted. After the POD module has performed its internal initialization, the interface initialization phase will begin.

3. The Host has performed a reset operation for some reason (spurious signal, brownout, software problem, etc.) that has not caused the POD module to reset. The Host shall go through its initialization and then shall perform a PCMCIA reset on the POD module. After the POD module has performed its internal initialization, then the interface initialization shall begin.

4. The POD module has performed a reset operation for some reason (spurious signals, software problem, etc.) that has not caused the Host to reset. The Host shall incorporate the timeout detection and will thus detect a timeout and will perform a POD reset.

6.7.4 OOB Connection and Disconnection Behavior

If a POD module is not connected to the Host, the OOB transmitter in the Host shall not operate. Upon connection of a POD module, the Host shall initiate, with the POD module, the low-level personality change sequence defined in Section 6.7.5 of this document. If successful, the Host shall then activate the OOB transmitter as instructed by the POD module.

The OOB receiver in the Host shall be connected only to the POD module interface.

6.7.5 Low Level Step by Step POD Personality Change Sequence

The POD Personality Change covers the detection of the POD module and the transition to the POD interface. A step-by-step operation for the interface initialization of the physical layer from the POD module's viewpoint is defined below.

1. The POD module is inserted or already present in a Host.

2. Please refer to section 4.12.1 of "PC Card Standard, Volume 2 Electrical Specification, March 1997" for timing diagrams and specifications.

- **Power-up:** Power is applied to the POD module with the RESET signal in a high-Z state for a minimum of 1 msec after VCC is valid (section 4.4.20 of the PC Card Electrical Specification). The POD module's READY signal (pin 16) shall be inactive (logic 0) within 10 usec after the RESET signal goes inactive (logic 0), unless the POD module will be ready for access within 20 msec after RESET goes inactive. Note that at this time the POD module shall only operate as an unconfigured PCMCIA module.
- **PCMCIA Reset:** The RESET signal goes active for a minimum of 10 usec. The POD module's READY signal (pin 16) shall be inactive (logic 0) within 10 usec after RESET goes inactive (logic 0), unless the POD module will be ready for access within 20 msec after RESET goes inactive. Note that at this time the POD module shall only operate as an unconfigured PCMCIA module.

3. After a minimum of 20 msec after RESET goes inactive (section 4.4.6 of "PC Card Standard, Volume 2 Electrical Specification, March 1997"), the Host shall test the POD module's READY signal. It shall not attempt to access the POD module until the READY signal is active (logic 1).

4. After the POD module has completed its PCMCIA internal initialization, it shall bring the READY signal active. At this time, all of the interface signals are defined by the PC Card interface standard for Memory Only Card interface (Table 4-1 of "PC Card Standard, Volume 2 Electrical Specification, March 1997"). The POD module must bring READY active within 5 seconds after RESET goes inactive (section 4.4.6 of "PC Card Standard, Volume 2 Electrical Specification, March 1997").

5. The Host shall read the Configuration Information Structure (CIS) available in the attribute memory to determine that the device is POD module, what version is used, and any other pertinent information. This data is outlined in section A.5.6 of CEA-679-C Part B with the revisions in section 3.1 of this document.

6. The Host shall read all the CCST_CIF subtuples to verify that the SCTE interface ID number (STCI_IFN) is present (0x341). (Informative Note--If it is not present, this means that a different PCMCIA module has been inserted which is not

capable of operating with the SCTE format, however, it may be capable of operating as a NRSS-B module (CEA-679-C Part B).)

7. The Host shall then write into the COR the value read in TPCE_INDX. Following this write cycle, the Host shall switch the address signals A4-A8 to the OOB interface signals and the inband transport stream signals. The Host must implement a pull-down resistor on the ETX signal to prevent spurious operation of the transmitter. It must also implement a pull down resistor on the MCLKO signal to prevent invalid inband transport data from being received prior to the POD's personality change.

8. At a minimum of 10 usec after the COR write signal, the POD module shall switch to the OOB interface signals and the inband transport stream signals.

9. In the event that the POD module requires additional initialization, it shall not bring the FR bit in the status register active until it is ready to begin communications with the Host.

10. This completes the physical link layer initialization.



The following diagram helps define this operation.

Figure 6.7-2 POD Personality Change Sequence

6.7.6 Initialization Overview

The following sections provide a description of the initialization procedure that shall occur between the POD module and the Host.

6.7.6.1 Physical Layer Initialization

The physical layer initialization covers the buffer size negotiation of both the data and extended channels, and the initialization of the Host-pod transport layer and resource manager. The following shall be implemented in the order listed.

6.7.6.1.1 Data Channel Initialization

The data channel is initialized by the Host writing a '1' to the RS bit in the data channel Control/Status Register. After a minimum of 40 usec, the Host will write a '0' to the RS bit in the data channel Control/Status Register. The POD module shall clear out any data in the data channel data buffer and configures the POD interface so it can perform the data channel buffer size negotiation protocol. When the POD module is ready, it sets the data channel FR bit to '1'.

6.7.6.1.2 Extended Channel Initialization

The extended channel is initialized by the Host writing a '1' to the RS bit in the extended channel Control/Status Register. After a minimum of 40 usec, the Host will write a '0' to the RS bit in the extended channel Control/Status Register. The POD module shall clear out any data in the extended channel data buffer and configures the POD interface so it can perform the extended data channel buffer size negotiation protocol. When the POD module is ready, it sets the extended channel FR bit to '1'.

6.7.6.1.3 Data Channel Buffer Size Negotiation

The Data Channel buffer size negotiation is covered in sections 5.5 and A.2.2.1.1 of CEA 679 Part B (reference [1]). There are 2 buffers which must be negotiated, the POD buffer for the data channel and the Host buffer for the data channel. According to Section A.2.2.1.1. of [1], the minimum buffer size for the POD module is 16 bytes and the minimum buffer size for the Host is 256 bytes. The maximum size for both is 65,535 bytes.

Using the protocol called out in section A.2.2.1.1 of [1], the Host will read the POD module's data channel buffer size, compare the result to its data channel buffer size, and write the smaller of the two buffer sizes to the POD module's data channel. All future data channel transaction buffer size shall be at most this buffer size. Note that a data channel transaction's buffer size can be smaller than the negotiated buffer size.

6.7.6.1.4 Extended Channel Buffer Size Negotiation

The Extended Channel buffer size negotiation is the same as the data channel. Note that the buffer sizes of the data and extended channels do not have to be the same. The minimum buffer size for the POD module is 16 bytes and the minimum buffer size for the Host is 256 bytes. The maximum size for both is 65,535 bytes.

Using the protocol called out in section A.2.2.1.1 of [1], the Host will read the POD module's extended channel buffer size, compare the result to its extended channel buffer size, and write the smaller of the two buffer sizes to the POD module's extended channel. All future extended channel transaction buffer sizes shall be at most this buffer size. Note that a extended channel transaction's buffer size can be smaller than the negotiated buffer size.

6.7.6.2 Link Connection

The link connection (LPDU) is covered in section A.3.2 of [1]. No explicit initialization of the Link Layer is required.

6.7.6.3 Host-POD Transport Layer Connection

The transport layer (TPDU) connection is covered in sections 7 and A.4.1 of [1]. Section A.4.1.3 of [1] shall be supported with the addition of the following: "TPDU chaining shall not be supported. The maximum length of the transport data shall be limited to 65,534 bytes."

The Host shall request to open a transport connection. The host shall open exactly one transport connection for each POD module.

| Table 6.7-A Create Transport Connection | | | | | | |
|-----------------------------------------|-------|-----------|----------|--|--|--|
| Syntax | Value | # of bits | Mnemonic | | | |
| Create_T_C() { | | | | | | |
| create_T_C_tag | 82 | 8 | uimsbf | | | |
| length_field() | 01 | 8 | uimsbf | | | |
| t_c_id | XX | 8 | uimsbf | | | |
| } | | | | | | |

Where XX is defined by the Host. A transport connection ID (t_cID) value of zero is invalid.

The POD module shall respond with the following.

| Table 6.7-B Create Transport Connection Reply | | | | | | |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------|-----------|----------|--|--|--|
| Syntax | Value | # of bits | Mnemonic | | | |
| C_T_C_Reply (){ | | | | | | |
| C_T_C_Reply_tag | 83 | 8 | Uimsbf | | | |
| length_field() | 01 | 8 | Uimsbf | | | |
| t_c_id | XX | 8 | Uimsbf | | | |
| } | | | | | | |

A transport connection of ID "XX" now exists.

6.7.6.4 Resource Manager Session Initialization

The resource manager session initialization is covered in section 7.2.6.1 of [1].

First, the module requests a session to be opened to the Host's Resource Manager.

| Table 6.7-C Open Session Request | | | | | | |
|----------------------------------|----------|-----------|----------|--|--|--|
| Syntax | Value | # of bits | Mnemonic | | | |
| Open_session_request(){ | | | | | | |
| open_session_request_tag | 91 | 8 | uimsbf | | | |
| length_field() | 04 | 8 | uimsbf | | | |
| resource_identifier() | 00010041 | 32 | uimsbf | | | |
| } | | | | | | |

The Host shall respond with the following.

| Table 6.7-D Open Session Response | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------|-----------|----------|--|--|--|--|
| Syntax | Value | # of bits | Mnemonic | | | | |
| Open_session_response(){ | | | | | | | |
| open_session_response_tag | 92 | 8 | uimsbf | | | | |
| length_field() | 07 | 8 | uimsbf | | | | |
| session_status | 00* | 8 | uimsbf | | | | |
| resource_identifier() | 00010041 | 32 | uimsbf | | | | |
| session_nb | YYYY | 16 | uimsbf | | | | |
| } | | | | | | | |

* - assumes that the resource manager is always available.

The session number for the resource manager is YYYY and is created by the Host. A session number (session_nb) of zero is invalid.

The session is now created.

6.7.6.4.1 POD Resource Profile

The POD resource profile is obtained by the Host and is covered in section 8.4.1.1 of [1]. Since the POD module is designed to be the only module in a Host, it shall not report any resources to the Host.

First the Host's Resource Manager sends a Profile Inquiry to the module.

| Table 6.7-E Profile Inquiry | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------|----|--------|--|--|--|--|
| Syntax Value (hex) # of bits Mnemonic | | | | | | | |
| profile_inq(){ | | | | | | | |
| profile_inq_tag | 9F8010 | 24 | uimsbf | | | | |
| length_field() | 00 | 8 | uimsbf | | | | |
| } | | | | | | | |

The POD shall respond with

| Table 6.7-F Profile Reply | | | | | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------|----|--------|--|--|--|
| Syntax Value (hex) # of bits Mnemonic | | | | | | |
| profile_reply(){ | | | | | | |
| profile_reply_tag | 9F8011 | 24 | uimsbf | | | |
| length_field() | 00 | 8 | uimsbf | | | |
| } | | | | | | |

6.7.6.4.2 Host Resource Profile

The Host shall send a profile_changed APDU so that the POD module shall then perform a profile_inq APDU to which the Host shall respond with its profile_reply APDU.

The Host sends:

| Table 6.7-G Profile Changed | | | | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------|----|--------|--|--|
| Syntax Value (hex) # of bits Mnemonic | | | | | |
| profile_changed(){ | | | | | |
| profile_changed_tag | 9F8012 | 24 | uimsbf | | |
| length_field() | 00 | 8 | uimsbf | | |
| } | | | | | |

to which the module replies with:

| Table 6.7-H Profile Inquiry | | | | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------|----|--------|--|--|
| Syntax Value (hex) # of bits Mnemonic | | | | | |
| profile_inq(){ | | | | | |
| profile_inq_tag | 9F8010 | 24 | uimsbf | | |
| length_field() | 00 | 8 | uimsbf | | |
| } | | | | | |

to which the Host shall reply with:

| Table 6.7-I Profile Reply | | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|-----------|----------|
| Syntax | Value | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| profile_reply(){ | | | |
| profile_reply_tag | 9F8011 | 24 | uimsbf |
| length_field() | N*4 | 8 | uimsbf |
| for(i=0; i <n; i++)="" td="" {<=""><td></td><td></td><td></td></n;> | | | |
| resource_identifier() | XXXXXXXX | 32 | uimsbf |
| } | | | |
| } | | | |

where N is the number of resource identifiers and XXXXXXXX is each unique resource identifier.

NOTE: If a Host supports multiple versions of a given resource, each version of that resource will be reported as a resource identifier.

Now the module knows what resources are available in the Host.

6.7.6.5 Application Info Session Initialization

Each POD module application shall open a single session to the Application Information resource to pass application information and to manage application menu entry points. Once the session is created, the Host sends an application_info_req APDU to the POD module. The POD module will respond with the application_info_cnf APDU. Detailed operation of the application info is covered in section 8.4 of this document.

6.7.6.6 Conditional Access Application Initialization

A Conditional Access application in the POD module shall then create a single session to the CA Support resource in the Host to allow CA information from the SI and information about user-selected services to be given to the application. Once the session is created, the Host sends a CA Info Inquiry APDU to the application, which responds with CA Info APDU. The Host may then enter into a subsequent dialogue with the CA application to determine which selected services the CA application can descramble and under what conditions. This is described in section 8.4.3 of [1]. Under normal operating conditions, this session will never be closed.

6.7.6.7 Copy Protection

A Copy Protection application in the POD module shall create a session to the Copy Protection resource in the Host. Initialization of Copy Protection is covered in ANSI/SCTE 41 2001.

6.7.6.8 Extended Channel

An extended channel application in the POD module shall create a session to the Extended Channel Support resource to allow for the establishment of flows on the extended channel. These flows will be used for transferring IP packets and MPEG table sections across the POD/Host interface. Under normal operating conditions, this session will never be closed. Please refer to sections 4 and 8.9 of this document.

6.7.6.9 Host Control

A Host Control application shall create a session to the Host Control resource to allow the POD module to control various Host devices. Please refer to section 8.8 of this document for details on the Host Control resource.

6.7.6.10 Low Speed Communication

If reported by the Host as an available resource and the POD module implements a Low Speed Communication application, the POD module application shall create a session to the Low Speed Communication resource to allow the POD module to communicate to the headend through the Host.

6.7.6.11 Generic IPPV Support

If reported by the Host as an available resource and the POD module implements a Generic IPPV application, the POD module application shall create a session to the Generic IPPV resource to allow the Host to receive information on and purchase IPPV events.

6.7.6.12 System Time

If the POD module desires, it shall open a single session to the System Time resource to allow the POD module to receive system time from the Host.

6.7.6.13 Homing

If the POD module desires, it shall open a single session to the Homing resource in the Host to allow the POD module to determine when it may take control of the tuner. The Homing operation is defined in Section 8.13.

6.7.7 Interrupt Operation

Section 6.5.1 of this document defines that the PCMCIA IREQ# signal is available for use by the Host. This signal can be utilized by the Host to simplify the physical layer operation but currently cannot be used for transport layer operation.

6.7.7.1 Physical Level

The following diagram shows the POD module interrupt logical operation.



Figure 6.7-3 POD Module Interrupt Logical Operation

From this diagram, an interrupt shall occur whenever the DA or FR bits are set for either the data or extended channels and their corresponding interrupt enable bit is set.

6.7.7.1.1 Data Channel Operation

The Host/POD module relation on the data channel is defined to be a master-slave interface. The Host will periodically poll the POD module to determine if it has data.

The POD module will only transmit data to the Host after one of these polls. The interrupts are particularly useful when the transaction has to be fragmented. The method of interrupt implementation is dependent on the Host manufacturer and is not defined in this document.

6.7.7.1.2 Extended Channel Operation

The Host/POD module relation on the extended channel is defined in section 5.5 of this document. This is a peer type interface. The Host and POD module can transmit data over the extended channel at any time. The interrupt implementation is dependent on the Host manufacturer and is not defined in this document.

6.7.7.1.3 Priorities

Since the data and extended channel interrupts are logically OR'ed together to a single interrupt signal, a priority must be established. Since the data channel is defined to be the command interface, it shall have priority over the extended channel. Additionally, the data channel shall have less traffic overall than the extended channel.

This priority can be easily implemented by having the Host first read the data channel status byte and then the extended channel status byte when an interrupt occurs to resolve the source.

6.8 Mechanical Design

The mechanical design of the POD module shall follow either the PC Card or CardBus specifications called out in [13]. Additionally, any future modifications to the physical specification which are backwards compatible may be implemented.

7 LINK INTERFACE (NORMATIVE)

7.1 Data Channel

The link layer of the Data Channel is compliant to the link layer of CEA-679-C Part B Command Interface.

7.2 Extended Channel

The Extended Channel provides a data path between the POD and the Host. The QPSK modem (the traditional "out-of-band channel") is one such path. A High Speed Host Modem, when present, provides another.

The link layer of the Extended Channel fragments the datagram PDU, if necessary, over the limited buffer size of the physical layer and reassembles received fragments. The link header includes two control bits and the FLOW_ID value that has been

| negotiated by the link device for the application (see section 8.9) to identify the end- |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| to-end communication flow. |

| Table 7.2-A Extended Channel Link Layer Packet | | | | | | |
|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|---------------|--|--|--|--|
| L | F | 0x00 | | | | |
| | | FLOW_ID (MSB) | | | | |
| | | FLOW_ID | | | | |
| | FLOW_ID (LSB) | | | | | |
| | FLOW_ID (LSB) datagram PDU fragment | | | | | |

- L: Last indicator: if this bit is set to '0', then at least one more datagram fragment follows. If this bit is set to '1' then this fragment is the last in the datagram.
- **F**: First fragment indicator: if this bit is set to '1', then this fragment is the first of the datagram. If this bit is set to '0' then this fragment is not the first.
- **FLOW_ID**: 3-byte flow identifier associating the data with a registered flow. The FLOW_ID value of zero is reserved is not to be assigned.

For data flows made available to the Host by the POD, the POD is responsible for link layer processing of messages to be transferred across the Extended Channel. It is the Host's responsibility to re-assemble received datagram PDU fragments, and to segment PDUs for delivery across the interface. For data flows made available to the POD by the Host, the roles are reversed.

Received datagram PDU fragments shall be reassembled into either IP packets or MPEG-2 table sections, depending upon the Service_type associated with the flow given by FLOW_ID. The maximum size of the reassembled PDU (IP packet or MPEG-2 table section) shall be 4096 for any Service Type.

7.2.1 Maximum PDUs

Datagram PDUs to be transmitted upstream shall be segmented into fragments not exceeding the negotiated buffer size. The maximum size of any PDU before fragmentation shall be 4096 bytes for downstream data for any Service Type. The maximum size of any PDU before fragmentation shall be 1500 bytes for upstream data for any Service Type.

8 APPLICATION INTERFACE (NORMATIVE)

8.1 Scope Introduction

The Host-POD Interface Specification requires the following extensions to the Host, the Host-POD Interface Specification requires the following extensions to CEA-679-C Part B on the Data Channel. The Extended Channel does not have an application layer.

| Table 8.1-A Host-POD Interface Resources | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------------------|------------------|-----------------------------------|-------|------|----------------|-------------|
| Resource | CEA 679-C | Host-POD | Class | Туре | Version | Resource ID |
| Resource Manager | Yes | Yes | 1 | 1 | 1 | 00010041 |
| MMI | Yes | Updated | 64 | 2 | 1 | 00400081 |
| Application Info | Yes | Updated | 2 | 2 | 1 | 00020081 |
| Low Speed Communication (Cable Return) | Yes ² | Updated and Optional ³ | 96 | 50 | 3 | 00605043 |
| Low Speed Communication (Host Modem) | Yes ² | Updated and Optional ³ | 96 | 80 | 3 | 00608043 |
| Conditional Access Support | Yes | Yes | 3 | 1 | 2 | 00030042 |
| Copy Protection | No | Yes | 176 | 3 | 1 | 00B000C1 |
| Host Control | Yes | Updated | 32 | 1 | 3 | 00200043 |
| Extended Channel Support | No | Yes | 160 | 1 | 1 ⁴ | 00A00041 |
| Generic IPPV Support | Yes | Updated and Optional ³ | 128 | 2 | 1 | 00800081 |
| Specific Application Support | No | Yes | 144 | 1 | 1 | 00900041 |
| Generic Feature Control | No | Yes | 42 | 1 | 1 | 002A0041 |
| Homing Resource ¹ | No | Yes | 17 | 1 | 2 | 00110042 |
| System Time | Yes | Yes | 36 | 1 | 1 | 00240041 |
| Generic Diagnostic Resource | No | Yes | 260 | 1 | 1 | 01040041 |

NOTES:

1. The Homing resource is defined in Section 8.13 of this standard.

2. The Resource ID delivered by a Host shall be either 0x00605043 for a Host device with a Cable Return Channel (e.g., SCTE 55-1 or SCTE 55-2), or 0x00608043 for a Host device with a Host modem (e.g., DOCSIS). If no Low Speed Communication Resource Identifier is reported by the Host than the Host device is assumed to be equipped with only a Forward Data Channel. The POD may use the presence of the Resource ID as a means to identify what type of Cable Return Channel is supported by the Host.

3. If a device manufacturer opts to implement an optional resource on a device, then the resource shall use the indicated resource ID.

4. The Resource Version depends on the implementation of a Host High Speed (DOCSIS) Modem. See the description of Table 8.9-A in Section 8.9.

| | Table 8.1-B Host-POD Interface Resource Loading | | | | | |
|------|-------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------|-----------------------|--|--|
| ltem | Name | Maximum sessions at one time | Closes | Resource Location | | |
| 1 | Transport Connection ID | 1 | No | Host creates TC_ID | | |
| 2 | Sessions total (sum of items 3- 16) | 128 | N/A | N/A | | |
| 3 | Resource Manager | 32 | No | Host | | |
| 4 | MMI | 1 | No | Host | | |
| 5 | Application Info | 1 | No | Host | | |
| 6 | Low Speed Communication | 1 | Yes | Host | | |
| 7 | Conditional Access Support | 1 | No | Host | | |
| 8 | Copy Protection | 1 | No | Host | | |
| 9 | Host Control | 1 | No | Host | | |
| 10 | Extended Channel Support | 2 | No | Host | | |
| 11 | Generic IPPV Support | 1 | Yes | Host | | |
| 12 | Specific Application Support | 32 | Yes | Host | | |
| 13 | Generic Feature Control | 1 | No | Host | | |
| 14 | Homing | 1 | Yes | Host | | |
| 15 | Generic Diagnostic Support | 1 | No | Host | | |
| 16 | System Time | 1 | Yes | Host | | |

NOTES:

1. A maximum of one Generic Diagnostic Support resource may be open at a time.

2. A POD module may assume that it is the only POD module in a Host, even if the Host supports multiple POD modules. It is the responsibility of the Host to handle the multiple interfaces. Specifications for multiple POD interfaces are beyond the scope of this standard and subject to further study.

3. After buffer negotiation, the Host will create a transport connection. The POD module will ignore the t_c_id value in the link layer when there is no transport connection established.

4. Only one program may be descrambled at a time, hence only one conditional access support session shall be opened. The conditional access session does not close according to section 6.7. Descrambling of multiple programs is beyond the scope of this standard and subject to further study

5. Only one copy protection session shall be open at a time. The copy protection session does not close according to section 6.7.

6. Two extended channel sessions may be open at a time, however only when the Host has modem capability (either phone, DOCSIS, or other); otherwise only one extended channel session may be open.

The extended channel session does not close according to section 6.7.

7. Only one host control session shall be open at a time. The host control session does not close according to section 6.7.

8. A maximum of one Generic IPPV session may be open at a time.

9. A maximum of one homing session may be open at a time.

10. A maximum of one system time session may be open at a time.

11. The POD shall limit the resource to the values defined in Table 8.1-B. The host shall at a minimum support the number of resources defined in Table 8.1-B.

8.2 Resource Manager

The CEA-679-C Part B Resource Manager resource shall be implemented.

8.3 Man Machine Interface

8.3.1 Introduction

The Man-Machine Interface resource resides in the Host. The POD shall only open one session to this resource if it wants to initialize one or more MMI dialogs. This session shall remain open during normal operation.

The Man-Machine Interface resource provides

- Support to the POD to open an MMI dialog
- Support to the Host to confirm that the MMI dialog has been opened
- Support to the POD to close the MMI dialog, it opened

• Support to the Host to confirm that the MMI dialog has been closed either upon POD or Host request

The **Man-Machine Interface** resource has been changed to type 2 to reflect the changes listed into this section compared to CEA-679-C.

| Table 8.3-A Man Machine Interface Resource | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------------|----|---|---|-----------|--|
| ResourceClassTypeVersionIdentifier (hex) | | | | | |
| MMI | 64 | 2 | 1 | 000400081 | |

The **Man-Machine Interface** resource includes four APDUs as described in the following table:

| Table 8.3-B Man Machine Interface Objects | | | | | |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------|----------|---------------------------|--|--|
| Apdu_tag | Tag value (hex) | Resource | Direction Host <-> POD | | |
| open_mmi_req() | 9F8820 | MMI | ÷ | | |
| open_mmi_cnf() | 9F8821 | MMI | \rightarrow | | |
| close_mmi_req() | 9F8822 | MMI | ÷ | | |
| close_mmi_cnf() | 9F8823 | MMI | \rightarrow | | |

8.3.2 Open_mmi_req() & Open_mmi_cnf()

The POD shall send an *Open_mmi_req()* APDU to the Host when it wants to initialize an MMI dialog. The Host shall reply with an *Open_mmi_cnf()* APDU to confirm the status of the request.

For Host that supports more than one MMI dialog at the same time (multiple windows), the POD may send another *Open_mmi_req()* APDU, before it closes the previous one.

8.3.2.1 Open_mmi_req()

| Table 8.3-C Open MMI Request Object Syntax | | | | |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|--|--|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic | | |
| open_mmi_req(){ | | | | |
| open_mmi_req_tag | 24 | uimsbf | | |
| length_field() | | | | |
| zero | 8 | 0x00 | | |
| url_length() | 16 | uimsbf | | |
| For (I=0; I < url_length; I++) { | | | | |
| url_byte | 8 | uimsbf | | |
| } | | | | |
| } | | | | |

Where:

url_byte

Each *url_byte* is one octet of a parameter that points to a HTML page in the POD and that needs to be queried by the Host display application using the Server_query() APDU when the MMI dialog will be opened

8.3.2.2 Open_mmi_cnf()

| Table 8.3-D Open MMI Confirm Object Syntax | | | | |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|--|--|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic | | |
| Open_mmi_cnf(){ | | | | |
| open_mmi_cnf_tag | 24 | Uimsbf | | |
| length_field() | | | | |
| dialog_number() | 8 | Uimsbf | | |
| open_status() | 8 | Uimsbf | | |
| } | | | | |

where:

open_status

The status of the requested MMI dialog as defined in the following table.

| Table 8.3-E Open Status Values | | | |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------|--|--|
| Open_Status | Value (hex) | | |
| OK- Dialog Opened | 00 | | |
| Request Denied – Host Busy | 01 | | |
| Request Denied – Display Type not Supported | 02 | | |
| Request Denied – No Video Signal | 03 | | |
| Request Denied – No more Windows Available | 04 | | |
| Reserved | 05-FF | | |

dialog_number

A number supplied by the Host issued from an 8-bit cyclic counter that identifies each *Open_mmi_cnf()* APDU and allows the POD to close the MMI dialog.

8.3.3 Close_mmi_req() & Close_mmi_cnf()

The POD shall send a *Close_mmi_req()* APDU to the Host to close the MMI dialog previously opened with an *Open_mmi_req()* APDU. The Host shall reply with a *Close_mmi_cnf()* object to report the status of the close operation.

The Host may send a *Close_mmi_cnf()* without the POD having sent a *Close_mmi_req()* to inform about a close operation performed by the Host.

8.3.3.1 Close_mmi_req()

| Table 8.3-F Close MMI Request Object Syntax | | | |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|--|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic | |
| close_mmi_req(){ | | | |
| close_mmi_req_tag | 24 | Uimsbf | |
| length_field() | | | |
| dialog_number() | 8 | Uimsbf | |
| } | | | |

where:

dialog_number

The number of the MMI dialog provided by the *Close_mmi_req()*.

8.3.3.2 Close_mmi_cnf()

| Table 8.3-G Close MMI Confirm Object Syntax | | | |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|--|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic | |
| close_mmi_cnf(){ | | | |
| close_mmi_cnf_tag | 24 | uimsbf | |
| length_field() | | | |
| dialog_number() | 8 | uimsbf | |
| } | | | |

where:

dialog_number The number of the MMI dialog provided by the *Close_mmi_req()*.

8.4 Application Information

8.4.1 Introduction

The **Application Information** resource resides in the Host. The POD shall only open one session to it after it has completed the profile inquiry operation with the **Resource Manager** resource (see Section 6.7.6.4).

The Application Information resource provides:

- Support to the Host to expose its display characteristics to the POD
- Support to the POD to expose its applications to the Host
- Support to the POD to deliver HTML pages to the Host

The **Application Information** resource has been changed to type 2 to reflect the changes listed in this section as compared to CEA-679-C. During initialization, the POD module opens a session to the **Application Information** resource on the Host. This session shall remain open during normal operation.

| Table 8.4-A Application Information Resource | | | | |
|----------------------------------------------|-------|------|---------|------------------|
| Resource | Class | Туре | Version | Identifier (hex) |
| Application_info | 2 | 2 | 1 | 00020081 |

The **Application Information** resource includes four APDUs as described in the following table:

| Table 8.4-B Table Application Information Objects | | | |
|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------|------------------|---------------------------|
| Apdu_tag | Tag value (hex) | Resource | Direction Host <-> POD |
| application_info_req() | 9F8020 | Application Info | \rightarrow |
| application_info_cnf() | 9F8021 | Application Info | ÷ |
| server_query() | 9F8022 | Application Info | \rightarrow |
| server_reply() | 9F8023 | Application Info | ÷ |

The method for initiating an application is beyond the scope of this document.

8.4.2 Application_info_req() & Application_info_cnf()

The Host shall send, as soon as the POD has opened the **Application Information** resource, an *Application_info_req()* APDU to the POD to advertise its display capabilities. The POD shall reply with an *Application_info_cnf()* APDU to describe its supported applications.

8.4.2.1 Application_info_req()

| Table 8.4-C Application Information Request Object Syntax | | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|--|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic | |
| Application_info_req() { | | | |
| Application_info_req_tag | 24 | uimsbf | |
| length_field() | | | |
| Display_rows | 16 | uimsbf | |
| Display_columns | 16 | uimsbf | |
| Vertical_scrolling | 8 | uimsbf | |
| Horizonal_scrolling | 8 | uimsbf | |
| Multi_window | 8 | uimsbf | |
| Data_entry_support | 8 | uimsbf | |
| HTML_support | 8 | uimsbf | |
| if (HTML_support==1) then { | | | |
| Link_support | 8 | uimsbf | |
| Form_support | 8 | uimsbf | |
| Table_support | 8 | uimsbf | |
| List_support | 8 | uimsbf | |
| Image_support | 8 | uimsbf | |
| } | | | |
| } | | | |

Where:

Display_rows

This field defines the number of rows of the display device.

Display_columns

This field defines the number of columns of the display device. Columns are one pixel in width.

Vertical_scrolling

This field defines if the Host display application supports vertical scrolling (Vertical_scrolling = 1), or not (Vertcal_scrolling = 0).

Default value is 0.
Horizontal_scrolling

This field defines if the Host display application supports horizontal scrolling (Horizontal_scrolling = 1), or not (Horizontal_scrolling =0).

Default value is 0.

Multi_window

This field is deprecated and shouldbe set to zero. Data_entry_support

This field defines the data entry capability of the Host, according to the following table. The POD may use this information in creating HTML pages.

| Table 8.4-D Data Entry Support Values | | | |
|---------------------------------------|------|--|--|
| Data_entry_support Value (hex) | | | |
| None | 0 | | |
| Last/Next | 1 | | |
| Numeric Pad | 2 | | |
| Alpha Keyboard with Mouse | 3 | | |
| Reserved | 4-FF | | |

HTML_support

This field defines the HTML support capability of the Host display application, according to the following table. All Hosts shall support as a minimum the Baseline HTML profile. The Baseline HTML profile is defined in Appendix C.

| Table 8.4-E HTML Support Values | | | |
|---------------------------------|------|--|--|
| HTML_support Value (hex) | | | |
| Baseline Profile | 0 | | |
| Custom Profile | 1 | | |
| HTML 3.2 | 2 | | |
| XHTML 1.0 | 3 | | |
| Reserved | 4-FF | | |

Link_support

This field defines if the Host display application supports single or multiple Links, according to the following table.

| Table 8.4-F Link Support Values | | |
|---------------------------------|------|--|
| Link_support Value (hex0 | | |
| One link | 0 | |
| Multiple links | 1 | |
| Reserved | 2-FF | |

Form_support

This field defines if the Host display application supports Forms, according to the following table.

| Table 8.4-G Form Support Values | | | |
|---------------------------------|------|--|--|
| Form_support Value (hex) | | | |
| None | 0 | | |
| HTML 3.2 w/o POST method | 1 | | |
| HTML 3.2 | 2 | | |
| Reserved | 3-FF | | |

Table_support

This field defines if the Host display application supports Tables, according to the following table.

| Table 8.4-H Table Support Values | | |
|----------------------------------|------|--|
| Table_support Value (hex) | | |
| None | 0 | |
| HTML 3.2 | 1 | |
| Reserved | 2-FF | |

List_support

This field defines if the Host display application supports Lists, according to the following table.

| Table 8.4-I List Support Values | | | |
|---------------------------------|------|--|--|
| List_support Value (hex) | | | |
| None | 0 | | |
| HTML 3.2 w/o Descriptive Lists | 1 | | |
| HTML 3.2 | 2 | | |
| Reserved | 3-FF | | |

Image_support

This field defines if the Host display application supports Images, according to the following table.

| Table 8.4-J Image Support Values | | | |
|--------------------------------------------------|------|--|--|
| Image_support Value (hex) | | | |
| None | 0 | | |
| HTML 3.2 – PNG Picture under RGB w/o resizing | 1 | | |
| HTML 3.2 | 2 | | |
| Reserved | 3-FF | | |

| Table 8.4-K Application Information Confirm Object Syntax | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| Application_info_cnf() { | | |
| application_info_cnf_tag | 24 | uimsbf |
| length_field() | | |
| pod_manufacturer_id | 16 | uimsbf |
| pod_version_number | 16 | uimsbf |
| number_of_applications | 8 | uimsbf |
| for (I=0; I <number_of_applications; i++)="" td="" {<=""><td></td><td></td></number_of_applications;> | | |
| application_type | 8 | uimsbf |
| application_version_number | 16 | uimsbf |
| application_name_length | 8 | uimsbf |
| for (J=0; J <application_name_length; j++)<="" td=""><td></td><td></td></application_name_length;> | | |
| { | | |
| application_name_byte | 8 | bslbf |
| } | | |
| application_url_length | 8 | uimsbf |
| for (J=0; J <application_url_length; j++)<="" td=""><td></td><td></td></application_url_length;> | | |
| { | | |
| application_url_byte | 8 | bslbf |
| } | | |
| } | | |
| } | | |

8.4.2.2 Application_info_cnf()

Where:

pod_manufacturer_id

The first byte specifies the POD module manufacturer, while the second byte, which is not defined here, can be used by the POD module manufacturer to privately identify product generation and derivatives.

| Table 8.4-L Pod Manufacturer ID Values | | | |
|----------------------------------------|-----------|--|--|
| Pod_manufacturer_id Value (hex) | | | |
| Motorola | 00XX | | |
| Scientific Atlanta | 01XX | | |
| SCM Microsystems | 02XX | | |
| Future | 0300-FFFF | | |

pod_version_number:

Privately defined by the POD module manufacturer. The POD module shall upgrade the **pod_version_number** each time the POD module is modified by using the POD Module Upgrade Host Interface (Section 8.13).

application_type

The POD module application type are:

| Table 8.4-M Application Type Values | | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| Application_type | Value (hex) | Description | |
| Conditional Access | 00 | conditional access application | |
| POD-Host Binding Information | 01 | POD-Host binding information application (NOTE: see Figure 3.2- A of SCTE 41 2003) | |
| IP Service | 02 | support for bi-directional IP transactions over the extended channel | |
| Network Interface –SCTE 55-2 | 03 | support for ANSI/SCTE 55-2 2002 PHY and MAC layers on the out-of- band channel | |
| Network Interface – SCTE 55-1 | 04 | support for ANSI/SCTE 55-1 2002 PHY and MAC layers on the out-of- band channel | |
| Copy Protection | 05 | Copy protection application | |
| Diagnostic | 06 | Diagnostic application | |
| Undesignated | 07 | Undesignated application | |
| Reserved | 08-FF | | |

application_version_number

Defined by the POD application supplier. The POD module shall upgrade the application_version_number each time the POD application software is modified according to the POD Module Firmware Upgrade Host Interface (Section 8.13).

application_name_byte

The commercial name of the application specified as a text string in ASCII format. The Host shall replace the default generic identifier of the POD module's application with the application name. The application name, when selected by the user, triggers a Host initialized MMI dialog.

The Host shall display at least eight different POD module application name strings in its top menu. The application name length shall be limited to 32 characters.

application_url_byte

Defines the URL of the POD module application's top level HTML page in the POD module memory. The application URL may or may not be displayed in the Host top menu. The Host shall use the application URL in a server_query() object to initialize an MMI dialog with the POD module application, when an object identified by either the application name or the application URL is selected in the Host menu.

8.4.3 Server_Query() & Server_Reply()

The Host shall send a *Server_query()* APDU to the POD to request the information in the POD file server system pointed by a specific URL. The URL defines the access, Host, and location of the data that the Host is requesting. Upon receipt of the URL, the POD module locates the requested data and provides it back to the Host in the *server_reply()* APDU. The Host shall process and display the data returned in the *server_reply()* APDU in a timely manner.

8.4.3.1 Server Query

| Table 8.4-N Server Query Object Syntax | | |
|----------------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| server_query(){ | | |
| server_query_tag | 24 | uimsbf |
| length_field() | | |
| transaction_number | 8 | uimsbf |
| header_length | 16 | uimsbf |
| For (I=0; I < header_length; I++) { | | |
| header_byte | 8 | uimsbf |
| } | | |
| url_length | 16 | uimsbf |
| For (I=0; I < url_length; I++) { | | |
| url_byte | 8 | uimsbf |
| } | | |
| } | | |

Transaction_number

A number supplied by the Host issued from an 8-bit cyclic counter that identifies each *Server_query()* APDU and allows the Host to route the *Server_reply()* to the right MMI dialog.

Header_byte

Each **header_byte** is an octet of an optional parameter that uses the same format as the HTTP/1.1[16] request header to pass additional parameters related to the request, like browser version, accepted mime types, etc. A Host not supporting headers shall set **header_length** to 0. The POD module may also ignore this parameter.

url_byte

Each **url_byte** is an octet of a parameter that defines a protocol, domain, and location for the transfer of data. For the purposes of an application running on a POD module, the URL must allow the transfer of a file of data from the POD module to the Host.

The access indicator is "pod".

The second part of the URL is the Host. The convention for "current server" (i.e., the server that generated the current page) can be used and is indicated by an empty Host.

The third part of the URL is the file location. This is indicated by a hierarchical directory/file path.

For example, in order to request the file **menu.html** from the directory **apps/user/program_guide** on the POD module, the properly constructed URL would be:

pod:///apps/user/program_guide/menu.html

If, after receiving a **server_reply** from the POD module, the Host has data that it wants to send to the POD module, the Host can do so through a **server_query**. In this case, the last part of the URL contains a list of name-value pairs separated by "&"s. This list is preceded by a "?". A properly constructed URL would be:

pod:///path/file?name1=value1&name2=value2&...

Such a URL sent to an application on the POD module as a response to a **server_reply** would cause the name-value pairs to be processed by the application. Data entered and selected at the Host may be sent to the POD module through the use of these name-value pairs as part of the URL in a **server_query** object.

| Table 8.4-O Server Reply Object Syntax | | | |
|----------------------------------------|-----------|----------|--|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic | |
| server_reply(){ | | | |
| server_reply_tag | 24 | Uimsbf | |
| length_field() | | | |
| transaction_number | 8 | Uimsbf | |
| file_status | 8 | Uimsbf | |
| header_length | 16 | Uimsbf | |
| For (I=0; I < header_length; I++) { | | | |
| Header_byte | 8 | Uimsbf | |
| } | | | |
| file_length | 16 | Uimsbf | |
| For (I=0; I < file_length; I++) { | | | |
| file_byte | 8 | Uimsbf | |
| } | | | |
| } | | | |

8.4.3.2 Server Reply

transaction_number

A number supplied by the Host issued from an 8-bit cyclic counter that identifies each *Server_query()* APDU and allows the Host to route the *Server_reply()* to the right MMI dialog.

file_status

The file status is indicated by the following values:

| Table 8.4-P File Status Values | | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------|-------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| File_status Value (hex) | | | | | | | |
| ОК | 00 | | | | | | |
| URL_not_found | 01 | | | | | | |
| URL_access_not_granted | 02 | | | | | | |
| Reserved | 03-FF | | | | | | |

Header_byte

This parameter is an optional parameter to pass HTTP/ 1.1[16] response headers. This header may contain additional information on served file, like mime type, expiration date, etc. Both Host and module may not support this extension and process only file bytes. A POD module not supporting headers shall set header_length to 0.

file_byte

Each file_byte is an octet of the contents of the requested file. A server reply object with file_length equals to 0 will be interpreted as a null file.

8.5 Low Speed Communication (1)

The Low Speed Communication resource is used to support the identification of the Forward Data Channel (FDC), the Reverse Data Channel (RDC), and any type of Host modem implementations. The Low Speed Communication resource is not a means for passing upstream/downstream OOB data to/from POD via the Host-POD interface. All downstream OOB data shall be passed directly to/from the POD via the Host-POD OOB Interface. Support for Section 8.7 of CEA-679B Part B is optional.

| Table 8.5-A Low Speed Communication Resource | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------------------------|----|-----|---|----------|--|--|--|--|
| ResourceClassTypeVersionIdentifie (hex) | | | | | | | | |
| Low_Speed_Communication (Cable Return) | 96 | 321 | 3 | 00605043 | | | | |
| Low_Speed_Communication (Host Modem) | 96 | 513 | 3 | 00608043 | | | | |

For Host devices with a RDC, the Low_Speed_Communication Identifier shall be 0x00605043 for a Host device with a Cable Return Channel only, or 0x00608043 for a Host with a Cable Return Channel and a Host Modem (e.g., DOCSIS).

A Host that supports FDC only (no RDC) shall not report a Low Speed Communication identifier of either 0x00605043 or 0x00608043.

A Host that has a DOCSIS Cable Modem but does not have a SCTE 55 transmitter is not supported and shall not report a Low Speed Communication identifier of either 0x00605043 or 0x00608043.

The following table summarizes this operation:

| Table 8.5-B Low Speed Communication Resource ID Reporting Matrix | | | | | | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| SCTE 55 Receiver (FDC) | SCTE 55 Transmitter (RDC) | DOCSIS Cable Modem | Low Speed Communication Resource ID | | | | |
| Yes | No | No | None | | | | |
| Yes | No ¹ | Yes | None | | | | |
| Yes | Yes | No | 0x00605043 | | | | |
| Yes | Yes | Yes | 0x00608043 | | | | |

¹ This variation is not permitted.

1

8.6 Conditional Access

The CEA-679-C Part B *Conditional Access Support* resource shall be implemented in its entirety, with the following addition:

The POD shall inform the host of changes in CA states by sending the CA_UPDATE APDU defined below. A new version of the CA resource on the host shall process the CA_UPDATE APDU.

| Table 8.6-A Conditional Access Support Resource | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------|---|---|---|----------|--|--|--|--|
| Resource Class Type Version Identifier (hex) | | | | | | | | |
| Conditional Access Support | 3 | 1 | 2 | 00030042 | | | | |

This extension includes the following objects:

| Table 8.6-B Conditional Access Support Objects | | | | | |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------|---|--|--|
| Apdu_tag | Direction Host <-> POD | | | | |
| CA_update() | 9F8034 | Conditional Access Support | ÷ | | |

8.6.1 CA_update()

The POD Module shall use the *CA_update()* object to inform the Host when CA information for the currently tuned program has changed. Here CA_PMT(query) refers to a CA_PMT APDU with its ca_pmt_cmd_id parameter set to "query". Note that CA_UPDATE shall always reference the service to which the host is currently tuned. This is the last service for which a CA_PMT() was sent from the Host to the POD.

The different APDU tag prevents any confusion between CA_PMT_reply and CA_update APDUs during CA_PMT (query)/CA_PMT_reply exchanges. CEA-679-C Part B states that a CA_PMT (query) is sent by the Host to determine which conditional access resource can decrypt the specified service *when more than one*

conditional access resource is present. The reader should note that some conditional access implementations may send a CA_PMT (query) each time a service is tuned and with only one POD installed in the Host. While this behavior may differ from that defined in CEA-679-C Part B, it is done to determine if the currently tuned service can be descrambled by the POD. The POD may respond with a CA_PMT_reply specifying "descrambling possible" or "descrambling not possible". The Host would respond to a CA_PMT_reply (descrambling_possible) with a CA_PMT (ok_descrambling) to the POD.

| Table 8.6-C Conditional Access Support CA_update Object Syntax | | | | | | |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|----------|--|--|--|--|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic | | | | |
| CA_update() { | | | | | | |
| ca_update_tag | 24 | Uimsbf | | | | |
| Length_field() | | | | | | |
| Program_number | 16 | Uimsbf | | | | |
| Reserved | 2 | Bslbf | | | | |
| Version_number | 5 | Uimsbf | | | | |
| Current_next_indicator | 1 | Bslbf | | | | |
| CA_enable_flag | 1 | Bslbf | | | | |
| if (CA_enable_flag==1) | | | | | | |
| CA_enable /* at program level */ | 7 | Uimsbf | | | | |
| else if (CA_enable_flag==0) | | | | | | |
| reserved | 7 | Bslbf | | | | |
| for (i=0; I <n; i++)="" td="" {<=""><td></td><td></td></n;> | | | | | | |
| reserved | 3 | Bslbf | | | | |
| elementary_PID | 13 | Uimsbf | | | | |
| CA_enable_flag | 1 | Bslbf | | | | |
| if (CA_enable_flag==1) | | | | | | |
| CA_enable /*at elementary stream level*/ | 7 | Uimsbf | | | | |
| else if (CA_enable_flag==0) | | | | | | |
| reserved | 7 | Bslbf | | | | |
| } | | | | | | |
| } | | | | | | |

The syntax contains one possible ca_enable at program level and, for each elementary stream, one possible ca_enable at elementary stream level.

When both are present, only ca_enable at ES level applies for that elementary stream

When none is present, the host does not interpret the ca_pmt_reply object.

The CA_enable field indicates whether the application is able to perform the descrambling operation. CA_enable values are coded as follows:

| Table 8.6-D CA Enable Field Values | | | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|--|--|--|--|
| CA_enable Value (hex) | | | | | |
| Descrambling possible | 01 | | | | |
| Descrambling possible under conditions (purchase dialogue) | 02 | | | | |
| Descrambling possible under conditions (technical dialogue) | 03 | | | | |
| Descrambling not possible (because no entitlement) | 71 | | | | |
| Descrambling not possible (for technical reasons) | 73 | | | | |
| RFU other values | other values 00-7F | | | | |

The value "*descrambling possible*" means that the application can descramble with no extra condition (e.g.: the user has a subscription) or that the user has authorized the purchase of the elementary stream.

The value "*descrambling possible under conditions (purchase dialogue)*" means that the application has to enter into a purchase dialogue with the user before being able to descramble (pay per view program).

The value "*descrambling possible under conditions (technical dialogue)*" means that the application has to enter into a technical dialogue with the user before being able to descramble (e.g. : ask the user to select fewer elementary streams because the descrambling capabilities are limited).

The value "*descrambling not possible (because no entitlement*)" means that the user has no entitlement for the program or the user does not want to buy the program.

The value "*descrambling not possible (for technical reasons)*" means that the application cannot descramble the elementary stream for technical reasons (e.g. : all descrambling capabilities are already in use).

The protocol allows services to be selected for descrambling at either the program level or the elementary stream level. Where the host cannot support descrambling of different elementary streams by different modules, then it shall take as the CA_enable

value for the program the lowest of the CA_enable values returned for each elementary stream of the program. This ensures that any stream will be descrambled if it can be.

8.7 Copy Protection

A *Copy Protection* resource shall be required. The Copy Protection resource class for the Host-POD Interface is defined in Table 8.1-A of this standard.

8.8 Host Control

The CEA-679-C Part B *Host Control* resource is modified to give the POD Module the capability to set up the Host RF Receiver and the RF Transmitter, if any. Additional modifications have been included to give the POD module the capability to tune to the Host's In-band Receiver. This version of the Host Control resource includes both the OOB and inband tuning. While the OOB tuning is not used by the Host, the inband tuning is used. It is anticipated that the Host will perform its internal tuning operation without requiring to open a session to the Host Control resource. Therefore, when it receives any inband tuning APDUs from the POD module, it must decide whether to grant them or not. Typically, unless either a Homing resource has been opened and either the Host is in standby state or the POD module has transmitted a firmware_upgrade, the Host should not grant access to the inband tuner to the POD module. Support of version 1 in CEA-679-C Part B is optional.

| Table 8.8-A Host Control Resource | | | | | | | |
|------------------------------------------|----|---|---|----------|--|--|--|
| ResourceClassTypeVersionIdentifier (hex) | | | | | | | |
| Host Control | 32 | 1 | 3 | 00200043 | | | |

The POD module will have the Host Control resource open for control of the OOB receiver and transmitter and shall leave it open independent of the operation of the Homing resource.

The creation of the specification application resource includes the following objects:

| Table 8.8-B Host Control Objects | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------|---------------|--|--|--|--|
| Apdu_tag | Direction Host <-> POD | | | | | | |
| OOB_TX_tune_req() | 9F8404 | Host Control | ÷ | | | | |
| OOB_TX_tune_cnf() | 9F8405 | Host Control | \rightarrow | | | | |
| OOB_RX_tune_req() | 9F8406 | Host Control | ← | | | | |
| OOB_RX_tune_cnf() | 9F8407 | Host Control | \rightarrow | | | | |
| inband_tune_req() | 9F8408 | Host Control | ÷ | | | | |
| inband_tune_cnf() | 9F8409 | Host Control | \rightarrow | | | | |

8.8.1 OOB_TX_tune_req() & OOB_TX_tune_cnf()

The POD Module shall use the *OOB_TX_tune_req()* object to set up the Host's RF Transmitter.

The Host shall respond with the *OOB_TX_tune_cnf()* object to the *OOB_TX_tune_req()* request.

| Table 8.8-C OOB TX Tune Request Object Syntax | | | | | | |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|--|--|--|--|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic | | | | |
| OOB_TX_tune_req() { | | | | | | |
| OOB_TX_tune_req_tag | 24 | Uimsbf | | | | |
| Length_field() | | | | | | |
| RF_TX_frequency_value | 16 | Uimsbf | | | | |
| RF_TX_power_level | 8 | Uimsbf | | | | |
| RF_TX_rate_value | 8 | Uimsbf | | | | |
| } | | | | | | |

| Table 8.8-D RF TX Frequency Value | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------|-----------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Bit | 7 | 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0 | | | | | | | |
| Frequency (MS) | | | | | | | | | |
| | Frequency (LS) | | | | | | | | |

RF_TX_frequency_value – This field defines the frequency of the RF Transmitter, in kHz.

| Table 8.8-E RF TX Power Level | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Bit | 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0 | | | | | | | | |
| RF Power Level | | | | | | | | | |

RF_TX_power_level - Power level of the RF Transmitter, in units of 0.5dBmV. The value 0x00 shall correspond to an output level of 0 dBmV.

| Table 8.8-F RF TX Rate Value | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------------|----|-----|----------|---|---|---|---|---|
| Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| | Ra | ate | Reserved | | | | | |

RF_TX_rate_value

| • | <i>Rate</i> – Bit rate. | 00 = 256 kbps |
|---|-------------------------|-----------------|
| | | 01 = 2048 kbps |
| | | 10 = 1544 kbps |
| | | 11 = 3088 kbps |

| Table 8.8-G OOB TX Tune Confirm Object Syntax | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------------------------------|----|--------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Syntax # of bits Mnemonic | | | | | | | | |
| OOB_TX_tune_cnf() { | | | | | | | | |
| OOB_TX_tune_cnf_tag | 24 | Uimsbf | | | | | | |
| Length_field() | | | | | | | | |
| Status_field | 8 | Uimsbf | | | | | | |
| } | | | | | | | | |

• *Status_field* – This field returns that status of the *OOB_TX_tune_req()*. If the request was granted and the RF Transmitter set up to the desired configuration, *Status_field* will be set to 0x00. . If the Host is a unidirectional Host, *Status_field* shall be set to 0x01; the POD shall not attempt to perform RF transmit operations

after receiving an *OOB_TX_tune_req()* with *Status_field* set to 0x01. If any of the parameters passed to the Host are outside of its capability, then the Host shall transmit the *OOB_TX_tune_req()* with *Status_field* set to 0x03. Otherwise it will be set to one of the following values:

| Table 8.8-H Status Field Values for OOB TX Tune Confirm | | | | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------|--|--|--|--|
| Status_field | Value (hex) | | | | |
| Tuning granted | 00 | | | | |
| Tuning Denied – RF Transmitter not physically available | 01 | | | | |
| Tuning Denied – RF Transmitter busy | 02 | | | | |
| Tuning Denied – Invalid Parameters | 03 | | | | |
| Tuning Denied – Other reasons | 04 | | | | |
| Reserved | 05-FF | | | | |

8.8.2 OOB_RX_tune_req() & OOB_RX_tune_cnf()

The POD Module shall use the *OOB_RX_tune_req()* object to set up the Host's RF Receiver.

The Host shall respond with the *OOB_RX_tune_cnf()* object to the *OOB_RX_tune_req()* request.

The OOB_RX_tune_cnf APDU should only be transmitted after either the requested frequency has been tuned and acquired ("tune time"), or 500msec has elapsed since receiving the Request, whichever comes first.

| Table 8.8-I OOB RX Tune Request Object Syntax | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------------------------------|----|--------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Syntax # of bits Mnemonic | | | | | | | | |
| OOB_RX_tune_req() { | | | | | | | | |
| OOB_RX_tune_req_tag | 24 | Uimsbf | | | | | | |
| Length_field() | | | | | | | | |
| RF_RX_frequency_value | 16 | Uimsbf | | | | | | |
| RF_RX_data_rate | 8 | Uimsbf | | | | | | |
| } | | | | | | | | |

• *RF_RX_frequency_value* – This field defines the frequency of the RF Receiver, in MHz. (Frequency = value * 0.05 + 50 MHz.)

| Table 8.8-J RF RX Frequency Value | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------|---|---|---|---|-------|--|--|--|
| Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 1 0 | | | |
| | 0 0 0 0 0 Value (MS) | | | | | | | | |
| | Value (LS) | | | | | | | | |

RF_RX_coding_value – This field defines the RF Receiver characteristics.

| | Table 8.8-K RF RX Data Rate | | | | | | | | |
|-----|-----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|------|--|--|
| Bit | 7-6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | | |
| | Rate | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Spec | | |

- *Rate* Bit rate = 2048 kbps when Rate = 00 or 01 1544 kbps when Rate = 10 3088 kbps when Rate = 11
 - Spec Spectrum is non-inverted when Spec=0 and inverted when Spec=1

| Table 8.8-L OOB RX Tune Confirm Object Syntax | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------------------------------|----|--------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Syntax # of bits Mnemonic | | | | | | | | |
| OOB_RX_tune_cnf() { | | | | | | | | |
| OOB_TX_tune_cnf_tag | 24 | Uimsbf | | | | | | |
| Length_field() | | | | | | | | |
| Status_field | 8 | Uimsbf | | | | | | |
| } | | | | | | | | |

• *Status_field* – This field returns that status of the *OOB_RX_tune_req()*. If the request was granted and the RF receiver set up to the desired configuration, *Status_field* will be set to 0x00. Otherwise it will be set to one of the following values:

| Table 8.8-M Status Field Values for OOB RX Tune Confirm | | | | | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Status_field Value (hex) | | | | | | |
| Tuning granted | 00 | | | | | |
| Tuning Denied – RF Receiver not physically available | 01 | | | | | |
| Tuning Denied – RF Receiver busy | 02 | | | | | |
| Tuning Denied – Invalid Parameters | 03 | | | | | |
| Tuning Denied – Other reasons | 04 | | | | | |
| Reserved | 05-FF | | | | | |

8.8.3 inband_tune_req() (Normative)

The inband_tune_req() APDU allows for the POD module to request the Host to tune the inband QAM tuner. The APDU will allow support of tuning to either a source_id or a frequency with the modulation type.

| Table 8.8-N Inband Tune Request Object Syntax | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic | | | | | |
| Inband_tune_req() { | | | | | | | |
| Inband_tune_tag | 24 | uimsbf | | | | | |
| length_field() | | | | | | | |
| tune_type | 8 | uimsbf | | | | | |
| if(tune_type == 0){ | | | | | | | |
| source_id | 16 | uimsbf | | | | | |
| } | | | | | | | |
| else if (tune_type == 1) { | | | | | | | |
| tune_frequency_value | 16 | uimsbf | | | | | |
| modulation_value | 8 | uimsbf | | | | | |
| } | | | | | | | |
| } | | | | | | | |

tune_type – Determines the definition of the tune_frequency_value.

| Table 8.8-O Tune Type Values | | | | | |
|------------------------------|-----------|--|--|--|--|
| Value (hex) | Туре | | | | |
| 00 | Source ID | | | | |
| 01 | Frequency | | | | |
| 02-FF | Reserved | | | | |

source_id – When tune_type = 0, the source_id is a 16 bit unsigned integer in the range of 0x0000 to 0xFFFF that identifies the programming source associated with the virtual channel on a system wide basis. IN this context, a source is one specific source of video, text, data, or audio programming. For the purposes of referencing virtual channels to the program guide database, each such program source is associated with a unique value of source_id. The source_id itself may appear in an IPG database, where it tags entries to associate them with specific services. The value zero for source_id, if used, shall indicate the channel is not associated with a source_id.

tune_frequency_value – When tune type = 1, tune_frequency_value contains the frequency for the Host to tune. The frequency is calculated by multiplying tune_frequency_value by 0.05 MHz (50 KHz resolution).

| Table 8.8-P Tune Value | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------|----------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| MSB | MSB Value (MS) | | | | | | | |
| LSB | LSB Value (LS) | | | | | | | |

modulation_value – When tune type = 1, modulation_value sets the type of modulation for the inband tuner.

| Table 8.8-Q Modulation Value | | |
|------------------------------|----------|--|
| Value Type (hex) | | |
| 00 | QAM-64 | |
| 01 | QAM-256 | |
| | | |
| 02-FF | Reserved | |

8.8.4 inband_tuning_cnf (Normative)

After the Host has received the inband_tuning, it will respond with the following APDU.

| Table 8.8-R Inband Tuning Confirm Object Syntax | | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------|----|--------|--|--|
| Syntax # of bits Mnemonic | | | | |
| Inband_tuning_cnf() { | | | | |
| inband_tuning_cnf_tag | 24 | uimsbf | | |
| length_field() | | | | |
| tune_status | 8 | uimsbf | | |
| } | | | | |

tune_status – The Host response to the inband_tuning APDU.

| Table 8.8-S Tune Status Values | | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------|--|
| Value Source Comment (hex) | | Comment | |
| 00 | Tuning accepted | Frequency, modulation type accepted | |
| 01 | Invalid frequency | Host does not support this frequency. | |
| 02 | Invalid modulation | Host does not support this modulation type. | |
| 03 | Hardware failure | Host has hardware failure. | |
| 04 | Tuner busy | Host is not relinquishing control of the tuner. | |
| 05-FF | Reserved | | |

8.9 Extended Channel Support

For purposes of the *Extended Channel*, the device (POD Module or Host) that provides the physical communications link to the headend is referred to as the "link device." The POD Module is the link device for the QPSK modem; the Host is the link device for the High Speed Host Modem.

The *Extended Channel Support* resource shall be created to register the interactive applications that expect to send and receive data to and from the *Extended Channel*.

All Hosts are required to provide the hardware necessary to support a QPSK downstream out-of-band channel for the POD. The POD shall forward data received on this channel to the Host as appropriate through one or more data flows requested by the Host. In some cases, the POD will terminate data received on the QPSK downstream OOB channel by using it itself (for example EMMs). In other cases, it may perform a filtering function and discard data known to be of no interest to the Host.

Supported system architectures imply two different ways of using the *Extended Channel Support* resource.

- The application is in the Host and the data are transferred to/from the headend via the QPSK modem.
- The application is in the POD Module and the data are transferred to/from the headend via the Host's High Speed Host Modem.

This resource has two versions. Version 1 of this resource is required for Hosts that do not have an embedded High Speed Host (DOCSIS) Modem and version 2 of this resource is required for Hosts that do have an embedded High Speed Host (DOCSIS) Modem. Version 2 of this resource includes support for all of the objects defined by version 1.

| Table 8.9-A Extended Channel Resource | | | | | |
|---------------------------------------|-------|------|---------|------------------|--|
| Resource | Class | Туре | Version | Identifier (hex) | |
| Extended_Channel | 160 | 1 | 1 | 00A00041 | |
| Extended_Channel | 160 | 1 | 2 | 00A00042 | |

This creation includes the following objects:

| Table 8.9-B Extended Channel Objects | | | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| Apdu_tag | Tag value | - | | |
| | (hex) | | Host Modem | POD Modem |
| new_flow_req() | 9F8E00 | Extended Channel Support (1) | ÷ | \rightarrow |
| new_flow_cnf() | 9F8E01 | Extended Channel Support (1) | \rightarrow | ÷ |
| delete_flow_req() | 9F8E02 | Extended Channel Support (1) | ÷ | \rightarrow |
| delete_flow_cnf() | 9F8E03 | Extended Channel Support (1) | \rightarrow | ÷ |
| Lost_flow_ind() | 9F8E04 | Extended Channel Support (1) | \rightarrow | ÷ |
| Lost_flow_cnf() | 9F8E05 | E05 Extended Channel Support (1) | | \rightarrow |
| inquire_DSG_mode() | 9F8E06 | Extended Channel Support (2) | \rightarrow | \rightarrow |
| Set_DSG_mode() | 9F8E07 | Extended Channel Support (2) | ÷ | ÷ |
| DSG_packet_error() 9F8E08 Extended Channel Support (2) | | ÷ | ÷ | |

8.9.1 New_flow_req() & New_flow_cnf()

The application shall use the **new_flow_req(**) object to register a new flow with the link device.

The link device shall return a new_flow_cnf() object in response to the new_flow_req() request.

| Table 8.9-C New Flow Request Object Syntax | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|--|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic | |
| new_flow_req() { | | | |
| new_flow_req_tag | 24 | uimsbf | |
| length_field() | | | |
| service_type | 8 | uimsbf | |
| if (service_type == mpeg_section) { | | | |
| Reserved | 3 | bslbf | |
| Pid | 13 | uimsbf | |
| } | | | |
| <pre>if (service_type == ip_u) {</pre> | | | |
| mac_address | 48 | uimsbf | |
| option_field_length | 8 | uimsbf | |
| for (i=0; i <option_field_length; i++)="" td="" {<=""><td></td><td></td></option_field_length;> | | | |
| option_byte | 8 | uimsbf | |
| } | | | |
| } | | | |
| if (service_type == ip_m) { | | | |
| Reserved | 4 | bslbf | |
| multicast_group_id | 28 | uimsbf | |
| } | | | |
| } | | | |

Service_type – This field defines the type of the requested service.

| Table 8.9-D Service Type Values for New Flow Request | | |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------|--|
| Service_type Value | | |
| MPEG_section | 0x00 | |
| IP_U – IP Unicast | 0x01 | |
| IP_M – IP Multicast 0x02 | | |
| DSG | 0x03 | |
| Reserved | 0x04-FF | |

MPEG_section – This Service_type is applicable only for flows between between POD module and the Host. The requested flow shall be in the form of MPEG-2 table sections (both long and short form). This type of flow is uni-directional, from the POD module to the Host only. It should be noted that the data may originate from either the QPSK modem or via the DSG interface. The value of the section_length field in these sections shall not exceed 4093 bytes.

When the table section is in long form (as indicated by the section_syntax_indicator flag set to '1'), a 32-bit CRC is present. The 32-bit CRC is present. The 32-bit CRC is also present in short-form sections (as ijndicated by the section_syntax indicator flag set to '0') carried in the SI_base_PID (0x1FFC). For these table sections in which an MPEG-2 CRC is known to be preset, the POD module shall verify the integrity of the table section using the 32-bit CRC at the table section level, or a 32-bit CRC at another protocol layer. Only messages that pass the CRC check shall be forwarded to the Host. The POD module shall discard table sections that are incomplete or fail the CRC check.

The 32-bit CRC may or may not be present in short-form sections associated with PID values other than the SI_base_PID (0x1FFC) and the POD module may send these sections to the Host without any checks. In this case, the Host is responsible for validation of these sections.

IP_**U** – IP Unicast. This service type shall be used both for flows between the POD Module and an embedded cable modem in the Host (DSG mode), and between the Host and an SCTE 55 modem in the POD module (SCTE 55 mode). The requested flow shall be in the form of IP packets addressed to or from the POD Module's IP address when in DSG mode, and the Host's IP address when in SCTE 55 mode. This type of flow may be bidirectional. The maximum length of any IP packet in SCTE 55 mode shall be 1500 bytes. With respect to DSG mode, the requested flow from the POD Module to the Host shall be in the form of IP packets addressed to the applicable destination IP address as determined by the POD Module. The requested flow from the Host to the POD Module in DSG mode shall be in the form of IP packets addressed to the IP address of the POD Module. The maximum total length of any IP packet in DSG mode shall be the DOCSIS maximum transmission unit (MTU) which is 1500 bytes. This MTU is relayed to the POD Module via the new_flow_conf() APDU.

IP_M – IP Multicast. This Service_type is shall be used both for flows between the POD module and a modem in the Host and for the Host and a modem in the POD module. The requested flow shall be in the form of multicast IP packets addressed to the multicast_group_ID assigned IP address. This type of flow is uni-directional, from network to application only. The maximum total length of any IP packet shall be 1500 bytes.

DSG - DSG extended channel interface. This data may only be transmitted from the Host to the POD module and only one flow may be open at a time. The format is defined in section 5.4 If the Host does not support DSG, then it shall return the "Request Denied – Service Type Unavailable" error code (0x02) in the new_flow_cnf() response.

PID – The 13-bit MPEG-2 Packet Identifier associated with the flow request. The POD shall be responsible for filtering the OOB MPEG-2 Transport Stream and delivering only MPEG table sections delivered on transport packets with the given value of PID.

multicast_group_ID – The 28-bit Multicast Group ID associated with the flow request. The modem function shall be responsible for filtering arriving multicast IP packets and delivering only packets matching the given IP_multicast_group_ID address.

MAC_address – The 48-bit MAC address of the entity requesting the unicast IP flow.

option_field_length – An 8-bit unsigned integer number that represents the number of bytes of option field data to follow.

option_byte – These bytes correspond to the options field of a DHCP message. One or more DHCP options per RFC 2132 may be included. The "end option" (code 255) shall not be used, so that the entity granting the IP flow request may append zero or more additional option fields before delivering the request to the server.

Conformance to this specification requires the Host and the POD Module to comply with the following requirements:

- The POD Module Interface shall support at least six concurrent MPEG_section Service_type flows.
- The POD Module Interface shall support at least one IP_U Service_type flow.
- If the Service Information Virtual Channel Table indicates that one or more services are defined as being transport out-of-band, the POD module shall provide one or more additional flows of the MPEG_section type.

- If the Host supports DSG, it shall support one DSG Service_type flow
- When the Host support a unicast IP flow, it shall use DHCP per RFC 2131 to obtain an IP address for POD module use. The Host shall provide the options parameters supplied by the POD module in the **New_flow_req()** to build the DHCP message, and add any other options as necessary or desired.
- The POD Module and Host are required to support only one outstanding **New_flow_req()** transaction at a time. The POD Module or Host shall send a **New_flow_cnf()** with a Status_field of 0x04 (Network Busy) when additional **New_flow_req()** messages are received and one is pending.

| Table 8.9-E New Flow Confirm Object Syntax | | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|--|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic | |
| new_flow_cnf() { | | | |
| new_flow_cnf_tag | 24 | uimsbf | |
| length_field() | | | |
| status_field | 8 | uimsbf | |
| flows_remaining | 8 | uimsbf | |
| if (status_field == 0) { | | | |
| flow_id | 24 | uimsbf | |
| service_type | 8 | uimsbf | |
| if (service_type == ip_u) { | | | |
| ip_address | 32 | uimsbf | |
| flow type | 8 | uimsbf | |
| flags | 3 | uimsbf | |
| max_pdu_size | 13 | uimsbf | |
| option_field_length | 8 | uimsbf | |
| <pre>For (i=1; i<option_field_length; i++){<="" pre=""></option_field_length;></pre> | | | |
| option_byte | 8 | uimsbf | |
| } | | | |
| } | | | |
| } | | | |
| } | | | |

Status_field – This field returns the status of the New_flow_req(). If the request was granted and a new flow created, the Status_field will be set to 0x00. Otherwise it will be set to one of the following values:

| Table 8.9-F Status Field Values for New Flow Confirm | | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------|---------|--|--|
| Status_field | Value | | |
| Request Granted | 0x00 | | |
| Request Denied – Number of flows exceeded | 0x01 | | |
| Request Denied – Service_type not available | 0x02 | | |
| Request Denied – Network unavailable or not responding | 0x03 | | |
| Request Denied – Network Busy | 0x04 | | |
| Reserved | 0x05-FF | | |

flows_remaining – Indicates the number of additional flows of the same Service_type that can be supported. The value 0 indicates that no additional flows beyond the one currently requested can be supported.

FLOW_ID – The unique flow identifier for this application's data flow. The FLOW_ID value of zero is reserved and is not to be assigned.

Service_type – This field reflects the type of the requested service.

IP_Address – This field is the 32-bit IP address associated with the requested flow.

flow_type - an 8-bit unsigned integer number that represent(s) the protocols supported by the POD to establish the IP-U flow. The field has the following values:

0x00 UDP and TCP supported

0x01 UDP unly supported

0x02-0xFF reserved

flags - a 3-bit field that contains information as defined in the following table pertaining to limitations associated with the interactive network.

| Table 8.9-G Flag field definitions | | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|---------|--|
| BITS | | | |
| 2 1 | | 0 | |
| Reserved | | no_frag | |

no_frag - a 1 bit Boolean that designates whether the network supports fragmentation. A value of 0_2 indicates that fragmentation is supported. A value of 1_2 indicates that fragmentation is not supported.

max_pdu_size - a 13 bit unsigned integer that designates the maximum PDU length that may be transmitted across the interface.

option_field_length - an 8 bit unsigned integer number that represents the number of bytes of option field data to follow.

option_byte - these bytes correspond to the options requested in the new_flow_req() message. The format of the field is as defined in RFC 2132. The end option (code 255) shall not be used.

8.9.1.1 new_flow_req IP Unicast DSG Mode Details

When the Host is configured for DSG mode, then the Host and POD Module shall interact as defined within this section:

- If the POD Module requires two-way communications in DSG mode, then the POD Module shall request a new IP Unicast flow using the new_flow_request() APDU
- When requesting the new flow, the POD Module shall at a minimum supply the Vendor Specific Options defined in Table 8.9-x and provide the MAC address of the POD Module in the MAC_address field.
- If the Host grants the request for the IP flow, then the Host shall acquire an IP address for the POD MODULE and forward this information to the POD Module in the IP_address field of the new_flow_cnf() APDU, the maximum transmission unit (MTU) for the DOCSIS network (1500 bytes for IP datagrams) in the max_pdu_size field and any requested options via the option_byte field.
- The Host shall acquire a unique IP address for the POD Module utilizing DHCP as defined in RFC-2131.
- The Host shall be responsible for resolving POD Module IP address conflicts as defined in RFC-2131.

- All Host DHCP transactions associated with acquiring the POD Module and IP address shall be over the embedded cable modem interface and shall not propagate to any other interface on the Host.
- The Host shall not use Network Address Translation (NAT) to provide an IP address for the POD Module.
- On receipt of an IP packet from the POD Module over the interface via the IP Unicast Flow, the Host shall acquire the appropriate destination MAC address, encapsulate the IP packet received over the interface within Ethernet frames utilizing the acquired destination MAC address.
- On receipt of an Ethernet frame from the embedded cable modem interface targeted to the MAC address of the POD Module, the Host shall extract the embedded IP packet and forward the packet to the POD Module via the granted Unicast IP Flow
- The Host shall not forward any Ethernet frames or IP packets destined to the POD Module to any interface other than the CHI.
- The Host shall only forward IP packets destined to the POD Module that have been received via the embedded cable modem interface or via applications resident on the Host.
- The Host shall not forward any IP packets received from the POD Module over the CHI to any interface other than the eCM interface.
- The POD Module shall implement the DHCP Vendor Specific Information Option (option 43) and Vendor Class Identifier Option (option 60) as specified in Tables 8.9-x and 8.9-y.

| option Encoding | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| Sub-option | Value | Description | |
| 1 | " <null>"</null> | The request sub-option vector is a list of sub- options (within option 43) to be returned to client by the server upon reply to the request. None defined. | |
| 2 | "CARD" | Device type of the entity making the DHCP request. | |
| 3 | "ECM:ESTB:CARD" | Indicates that a POD Module is making a request via the eCM's DOCSIS return channel | |
| 4 | " <device number="" serial="">"</device> | Serial Number of POD Module. If Serial Number is not available, then other unique identifier (other than MAC Address) may be utilized | |
| 5 | " <hardware number="" version="">"</hardware> | Hardware version number of POD Module | |
| 6 | " <firmware number="" version="">"</firmware> | Firmware version number of POD Module | |
| 7 | " <boot number="" rom="" version="">"</boot> | Boot ROM version number of POD Module | |
| 8 | e.g. "0204DF" | A 6-octet, hexadecimal-encoded, vendor- specific Organization Unique Identifier (OUI) that may match the OUI in the embedded cable modem's MAC address. | |
| 9 | e.g. "XYZ-CARD-001" | Vendor model number of POD Module | |
| 51 | e.g. "XYZ Corporation" | Vendor name | |
| 52 | "уууууу" | POD Module capability using the encoding format per DOCSIS specification. Since there is no standard/required capability identification, Conditional Access vendor must provide documentation on the supported capability. | |
| 53 | e.g. "000-01234-56789-000" (example is unit address of Motorola POD Module) | Conditional Access Vendor specific device identification | |
| 54 | e.g., "00AA11BB22CC33DD" | 64 bit Card_ID as specified in POD Module X.509 certificate | |

Table 8.9-HPOD Module DHCP Vendor Specific Information (Option 43) Sub-
option Encoding

| Table 8.9-I POD Module DHCP Vendor Class Indentifier (Option 60) Encoding | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| Option Value Description | | Description |
| 60 | "OpenCable 2.0" | OpenCable Version |

8.9.2 Delete_flow_req() & Delete_flow_cnf()

The interactive application shall use the *Delete_flow_req()* object to delete a registered data flow.

The link device shall respond with the *Delete_flow_cnf()* object to the *Delete_flow_req()* request.

| Table 8.9-J Delete Flow Request Object Syntax | | |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| Delete_flow_req() { | | |
| Delete_flow_req_tag | 24 | Uimsbf |
| Length_field() | | |
| FLOW_ID | 24 | Uimsbf |
| } | | |

| Table 8.9-K Delete Flow Confirm Object Syntax | | |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| Delete_flow_cnf() { | | |
| Delete_flow_cnf_tag | 24 | Uimsbf |
| Length_field() | | |
| FLOW_ID | 24 | Uimsbf |
| Status_field | 8 | Uimsbf |
| } | | |

• *Status_field* – This field returns the status of the *Delete_flow_req*(). If the request was granted and the flow deleted, the Status_field will be set to 0x00. Otherwise it will be set to one of the following values:

| Table 8.9-L Status Field for Delete Flow | |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Status_field | Value (hex) |
| Request Granted | 0x00 |
| Reserved | 0x01-0x02 |
| Request Denied – Network unavailable or not responding | 0x03 |
| Request Denied – Network busy | 0x04 |
| Request Denied – FLOW_ID does not exist | 0x05 |
| Request Denied – Not authorized | 0x06 |
| Reserved | 0x07-0xFF |

8.9.3 Lost_flow_ind() & Lost_flow_cnf()

A link device shall indicate that a registered data flow has been lost by issuing the *Lost_flow_ind()* object.

The application shall respond with the *Lost_flow_cnf()* object in response to the *Lost_flow_ind()* object.

| Table 8.9-M Lost Flow Indication Object Syntax | | |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| Lost_flow_ind() { | | |
| Lost_flow_ind_tag | 24 | Uimsbf |
| Length_field() | | |
| FLOW_ID | 24 | Uimsbf |
| Reason_field | 8 | Uimsbf |
| } | | |

• *Reason_field* – This field returns the reason the flow was lost. It will be set to one of the following values:

| Table 8.9-N Reason Field Values for Lost Flow Indication | |
|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| Reason_field | Value (hex) |
| Unknown or unspecified reason | 0x00 |
| IP address expiration | 0x01 |
| Network down or busy | 0x02 |
| Lost or revoked authorization | 0x03 |
| Reserved | 0x04-0xFF |

| Table 8.9-O Lost Flow Confirm Object Syntax | | |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| Lost_flow_cnf() { | | |
| Lost_flow_cnf_tag | 24 | Uimsbf |
| Length_field() | | |
| FLOW_ID | 24 | Uimsbf |
| Status_field | 8 | Uimsbf |
| } | | |

Status_field – This field returns the status of the *Lost_flow_ind*(). If the indication was acknowledged, the Status_field will be set to 0x00. Otherwise it will be set to one of the following values:

| Table 8.9-P Status Field Values for Lost Flow Confirm | 1 |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Status_field | Value (hex) |
| Indication Acknowledged | 0x00 |
| Reserved | 0x01-0xFF |

8.9.4 inquire_DSG_mode(), set_DSG_mode(), & DSG_packet_error()

Version 2 of the Extended Channel Support Resource adds the following three messages:

- **inquire_DSG_mode** () The Host can inquire of the POD the preferred operational mode for the network, either OOB mode or DSG mode.
- **set_DSG_mode** () The POD can inform the Host of the preferred operational mode for the network, either OOB mode or DSG mode.

• **DSG_packet_error** () - The POD can inform the Host of errors that occur in receiving DSG packets.

The Host shall use the inquire_DSG_mode () object to inquire the preferred operational mode for the network.

| Table 8.9-Q Inquire DSG Mode Object Syntax | | |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| inquire_dsg_mode () { | | |
| inquire_dsg_mode_tag | 24 | uimsbf |
| length_field() | | |
| } | | |

The POD shall use the set_DSG_mode () object to inform the Host of the preferred operational mode for the network. This message is sent in response to the inquire_DSG_mode () message or it may be sent as an unsolicited message to the Host. The method by which the POD determines the preferred operational mode is proprietary to the CA/POD system vendor.

| Table 8.9-R Set DSG Mode Object Syntax | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| set_dsg_mode () { | | |
| set_dsg_mode_tag | 24 | uimsbf |
| length_field() | | |
| operational_mode | 8 | uimsbf |
| if (operation_mode==dsg_mode or operation_mode==dsg_one-way_mode) { | | |
| number_mac_addresses | 8 | uimsbf |
| for (i=0; i< number_mac_addresses; i++) { | | |
| dsg_mac_address | 48 | uimsbf |
| } | | |
| remove_header_bytes | 16 | uimsbf |
| } | | |
| } | | |

Operational_Mode – This field defines the preferred operational mode of the network.

| Operational_mode | Value |
|------------------|---------|
| OOB_mode | 0x00 |
| DSG_mode | 0x01 |
| DSG_One-Way_mode | 0x02 |
| Reserved | 0x03-FF |

OOB_mode - In this mode, the reverse transmitter is under the control of the POD module through the use the **OOB_TX_tune_req** () message. The Host must respond to these messages by tuning the reverse transmitter to the requested frequency and coding value (bit-rate and power level). The POD module uses the OOB-RDC for returning data to the cable headend.

DSG_mode - In this mode, the reverse transmitter is under the control of the Host for DOCSIS functionality. If the POD attempts to command the reverse transmitter with the **OOB_TX_tune_req()** message while the Host is operating in the DSG mode the Host will deny the tune request with a Tuning Denied – RF Transmitter busy status.
DSG_One-Way_mode - In this mode, the reverse transmitter must be disabled for both the OOB channel and the DOCSIS return channel. This mode could be used in one-way cable systems and for network diagnosis in two-way cable systems.

A default operational mode must be utilized when the Host and/or POD is unable to obtain the preferred operational mode. There are two potential default conditions that must be addressed. In particular:

- a. Either the Host or the POD may not support the **Inquire_DSG_mode** () and **Set_DSG_mode** () messages.
- b. The POD may not have acquired the preferred operational mode from the network due to possible network errors.

To insure backward compatibility in case (a) above, an Advanced Host will initialize in the default operational mode of OOB_mode. In case (b), the POD Module shall instruct the Host that the preferred operational mode of OOB_mode.

If the operational mode is either DSG_mode or One-Way_Mode, the POD Module may provide up to eight Ethernet MAC addresses and the number of header bytes to be removed from the DSG tunnel packets. In DSG or one-way mode, the Host must filter IP packets whose Ethernet destination address match any of the DSG_MAC_Adddresses specified, remove the specified number of header bytes from these packets, and generate a serialized bit-stream across the DRX pin.

Number_MAC_Addresses – The number of DSG MAC Addresses allocated by the CA/POD provider to carry DSG tunnels. A maximum of eight DSG tunnels per CA/POD provider are allowed.

DSG_MAC_Address– The Ethernet MAC addresses allocated by the CA/POD provider to carry the number of DSG tunnels specified by Number_MAC_Addresses.

Remove_Header_Bytes – The number of bytes to be removed from the DSG tunnel packets before generating a serial bit-stream. A value of zero implies that no header bytes be removed.

| Table 8.9-S DSG packet_error Object Syntax | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------------|----|--------|--|--|--|
| Syntax # of bits Mnemonic | | | | | |
| DSG_packet_error () { | | | | | |
| DSG_packet_error_tag | 24 | uimsbf | | | |
| length_field() | | | | | |
| error_status | 8 | uimsbf | | | |
| } | | | | | |

DSG_packet_error () - The POD can inform the Host of errors that occur in receiving DSG packets. The Error_status indicates the type of error that occurred.

| Error_status | Value |
|------------------|---------|
| Byte_count_error | 0x00 |
| Reserved | 0x01-FF |

Byte_count_error – The POD did not receive the same number of bytes in the DSG packet as was signaled by the Host.

8.10 Generic IPPV Support

NOTE--The Generic IPPV Support resource is being deprecated, though it may still be in use; the preferred approach for supporting IPPV is to use the appropriate OCAP application.

The *Generic IPPV Support* resource provides Conditional Access information (in the POD Module) to the navigation application (in the Host). This allows subscriber access to Pay Per View functions such as purchase, cancellation and history review. The desired result is better subscriber recognition and increased IPPV usage.

If reported by the Host as an available resource and the POD module implements a Generic IPPV application, the POD module application shall create a session to the Generic IPPV resource to allow the Host to receive information on and purchase IPPV events.

ISO-8859-1 shall be used for the coding of text.

| Table 8.10-A Generic IPPV Support Resources | | | | | |
|----------------------------------------------|-----|---|---|----------|--|
| Resource Class Type Version Identifier (hex) | | | | | |
| Generic IPPV Support | 128 | 2 | 1 | 00800081 | |

This creation includes the following objects:

| Table 8.10-B Generic IPPV Support Objects | | | | |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|--|
| Apdu_tag | Tag value (hex) | Resource | Direction Host <-> POD | |
| Program_req() | 9F8F00 | Generic IPPV Support | \rightarrow | |
| Program_cnf() | 9F8F01 | Generic IPPV Support | ÷ | |
| Purchase_req() | 9F8F02 | Generic IPPV Support | \rightarrow | |
| Purchase_cnf() | 9F8F03 | Generic IPPV Support | ÷ | |
| Cancel_req() | 9F8F04 | Generic IPPV Support | \rightarrow | |
| Cancel_cnf() | 9F8F05 | Generic IPPV Support | ÷ | |
| History_req() | 9F8F06 | Generic IPPV Support | \rightarrow | |
| History_cnf() | 9F8F07 | Generic IPPV Support | ÷ | |

8.10.1 Program_req() & Program_cnf()

The Host's navigation application shall use the *Program_req()* object to request the POD Module's CA information on a particular program.

The POD Module shall respond with the *Program_cnf()* object to the *Program_req()* request.

| Table 8.10-C Program Request Object Syntax | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|--|--|--|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic | | | |
| program_req() { | | | | | |
| program_req_tag | 24 | uimsbf | | | |
| length_field() | | | | | |
| transaction_id | 8 | uimsbf | | | |
| transport_stream_id | 16 | uimsbf | | | |
| program_number | 16 | uimsbf | | | |
| source id | 16 | uimsbf | | | |
| event_id | 16 | uimsbf | | | |
| current_next indicator | 8 | uimsbf | | | |
| reserved | 7 | | | | |
| current_next | 1 | uimsbf | | | |
| program_info_length | 8 | | | | |
| for (i=0; i < program_info_length; i++) { | | | | | |
| ca_descriptor() | | | | | |
| /* ca descriptor at program level*/ | | | | | |
| } | | | | | |
| } | | | | | |

transaction_id – This field is a unique number generated by the Host to uniquely identify this transaction. The associated *Program_cnf()* message will include this *Transaction_ID* value. Hosts shall maintain a *Transaction_ID* counter and increment it by 1 (mod 256) for each new transaction.

transport_stream_id - A 16-bit unsigned integer field, in the range 0x0000 to 0xFFFF, that represents the MPEG-2 Transport Stream ID associated with the program being requested.

program_number - A 16-bit unsigned integer number indicating the program that is being requested.

source_id – A 16-bit unsigned integer number indicating the source_id of the program that is being requested. (This text should be inserted after the program_number field description.)

event_id – A 16-bit unsigned integer number specifying the event requested on the specified program_number. If the Event_ID is unknown, this field shall be set to all 0s.

current_next– Used to specify the current or next event on the specified program_number. Only relevant when Event_ID is set to 0. When not set, indicates that the current event is being requested. When set, indicates that the next event is requested.

program_info_length, CA descriptor – These fields shall be used by the Host to provide the POD Module with every program level *CA descriptor* of this MPEG program. The CA descriptor shall be, extracted from the PMT table by the Host navigation application.

| Table 8.10-D Program Confirm Object Syntax | | | | |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|--|--|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic | | |
| Program_cnf() { | | | | |
| Program_cnf_tag | 24 | Uimsbf | | |
| Length_field() | | | | |
| Transaction_ID | 8 | Uimsbf | | |
| Status_field | 8 | Uimsbf | | |
| If (Status_field == 0) { | | | | |
| Option_nb | 8 | Uimsbf | | |
| For (Option_ID=1; I <= Option_nb; | | | | |
| Option_ID++) { | | | | |
| Purchase_type | 8 | Uimsbf | | |
| Purchase_price | 16 | Uimsbf | | |
| Purchase_validation | 8 | Uimsbf | | |
| Expiration_date | 32 | Uimsbf | | |
| Program_start_time | 32 | Uimsbf | | |
| Initial_Free_preview_duration | 16 | Uimsbf | | |
| Anytime_free_preview_duration | 16 | Uimsbf | | |
| Title_length | 8 | Uimsbf | | |
| for (J=0; J < Title_length; J++) { | | | | |
| Title_txt | 8 | Uimsbf | | |
| } | | | | |
| Text_length | 8 | Uimsbf | | |
| for (J=0; J < Text_length; J++) { | | | | |
| Text_txt | 8 | Uimsbf | | |
| } | | | | |
| Descriptor_length | 16 | Uimsbf | | |
| for (K=0; K < Desc_length; K++) { | | | | |
| Descriptor() | | Uimsbf | | |
| } | var | | | |
| } | | | | |
| } | | | | |
| } | | | | |

Status_field – This field returns the status of the *Program_req()*. If the POD Module can provide the requested information on the pointed event then Status_field shall be set to 0x00. Otherwise it will be set to one of the following values.

| Table 8.10-E Status Field Values for Program Confirm | | | | |
|------------------------------------------------------|-------|--|--|--|
| Status_field Value (hex) | | | | |
| Request Granted | 00 | | | |
| Request Denied – POD module busy 01 | | | | |
| Request Denied – Unknown Event02 | | | | |
| Reserved | 03-FF | | | |

- *Option_nb* This field defines the number of options under which a particular event can be purchased
- *Purchase_type* This field characterizes how the event may be purchased

| Table 8.10-F Purchase Type Values for Program Confirm | | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------|--|--|--|
| Purchase_type | Value (hex) | | | |
| Viewing Only | 00 | | | |
| Viewing and Right to Copy Once | 01 | | | |
| Viewing and Right to Copy Unlimited | 02 | | | |
| Subscription | 03 | | | |
| Purchased for Viewing Only | 04 | | | |
| Purchased with Viewing and Right to Copy Once | 05 | | | |
| Purchased with Viewing and Right to Copy Unlimited | 06 | | | |
| Un-purchasable | 07 | | | |
| Reserved | 08-FF | | | |

Viewing only - This program may be purchased for viewing only, without the right to make any copies, as defined by the operator.

NOTE: Through private agreements between a cable operator and content providers, the cable operator determines the pricing and right to copy options appropriate for his market.

Viewing and Right to Tape Copy Once - This program may be purchased for viewing and with the right to copy the analog video output and make one copy as defined by the operator.

Viewing and Right to Copy Unlimited - This program may be purchased for viewing and with the right to make unlimited copies as defined by the operator.

Subscription - This program is a subscription event, and is not purchasable as an IPPV event.

Purchased for Viewing Only - This program has already been purchased with viewing rights only, and without the right to make any copies as defined by the operator.

Purchased with Viewing and Right to Tape Copy Once - This program has already been purchased for viewing with the right to tape and right to make one copy as defined by the operator.

Purchased with Viewing and Right to Copy Unlimited – This program has already been purchased for viewing with the right to make unlimited copies as defined by the operator.

Un-purchasable - This is not a purchasable program.

Reserved – These values are currently undefined, but are reserved for future IPPV purchase options, including digital copyrights. These values may be expanded as they are defined.

Purchase_price – This 2-byte field provides event pricing information. The event price is given by the Denomination unit multiplied by the Value. For example, if the Denomination unit is 5 cents, and the Value is 79, the price would be \$3.95.

| Table 8.10-G Purchase Price for Program Confirm | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| | Denomination unit in cents (MS) | | | | | | | |
| Value (LS) | | | | | | | | |

Purchase_validation – This parameter defines the level of validation the POD Module expects to validate the purchase.

| Table 8.10-H Purchase Validation Value for Program Confirm | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|--|
| Purchase_validation | Value (hex) | |
| No CA validation required | 00 | |
| PIN Code required for Purchase transaction | 01 | |
| PIN Code required for Cancel transaction | 02 | |
| PIN Code required for History transaction | 03 | |
| PIN Code required for Purchase and Cancel transactions | 04 | |
| PIN Code required for Purchase and History transactions | 05 | |
| PIN Code required for Purchase, Cancel, History transactions | 06 | |
| Reserved | 07-FF | |

- *Expiration_date* This field contains the expiration time of the event. It is a 32bit unsigned integer quantity representing the expiration time as the number of seconds since 12 am, January 6th 1980.
- *Program_start_time*: A 32 bit unsigned integer, defining the start time of the program, in GPS seconds since 12 AM January 6th, 1980.
- *Initial_free_preview_duration*: A 16-bit unsigned integer, defining the duration of the free preview period. The duration is measured from the program_start_time.
- *Anytime_free_preview duration*: A 16-bit unsigned integer, defining the duration of the Anytime_free_preview.
- *Title_length, Title_txt* These fields allow the POD Module to provide a purchase option title.
- *Text_length, Text_txt* These fields allow the POD Module to provide a purchase option text.
- *Desc_length* A 16-bit unsigned integer that indicates the length of the block of optional descriptors to follow. If no descriptors are present, the length shall indicate zero.
- **Descriptor()** A data structure of the form type-length-data, where *type* is an 8bit descriptor type identifier, *length* is an 8-bit field indicating the number of bytes to follow in the descriptor, and *data* is arbitrary data. The syntax and semantics of the data are as defined for the particular type of descriptor. The **content_advisory_descriptor()** (as defined in section 6.7.4 of ATSC A/65) may be used to indicate the rating of the program. The program rating shall be coded according to the MPAA and V-Chip Rating and Content Advisories to be used for parental restrictions on program purchases.

8.10.2 Purchase_req() & Purchase_cnf()

The Host's navigation application shall use the *Purchase_req()* object to request a purchase of a particular program offer.

The POD Module shall respond with the *Purchase_cnf()* object to the *Purchase_req()* request.

| Table 8.10-I Purchase Request Object Syntax | | | | | |
|---------------------------------------------|----|--------|--|--|--|
| Syntax # of bits Mnemonic | | | | | |
| Purchase_req() { | | | | | |
| Purchase_req_tag | 24 | Uimsbf | | | |
| Length_field() | | | | | |
| Transaction_ID | 8 | Uimsbf | | | |
| Option_ID | 8 | Uimsbf | | | |
| PINcode_length | 8 | Uimsbf | | | |
| For (I=0; I<=PINcode_length; I++) { | | | | | |
| PINcode_byte | 8 | Uimsbf | | | |
| } | | | | | |
| } | | | | | |

• *PINcode_length, PINcode_byte* – These fields allow the Host navigation application to pass the requested PIN code to the POD Module. In case no PIN code was requested, the *PINcode_length* is set to '0'.

| Table 8.10-J Purchase Confirm Object Syntax | | | | | | |
|---------------------------------------------|----|--------|--|--|--|--|
| Syntax # of bits Mnemonic | | | | | | |
| Purchase_cnf() { | | | | | | |
| Purchase_cnf_tag | 24 | Uimsbf | | | | |
| Length_field() | | | | | | |
| Transaction_ID | 8 | Uimsbf | | | | |
| Option_ID | 8 | Uimsbf | | | | |
| Status_field | 8 | Uimsbf | | | | |
| IPPVslot_ID | 8 | Uimsbf | | | | |
| Status_register | 8 | Uimsbf | | | | |
| Comment_length | 8 | Uimsbf | | | | |
| For (I=0; I<= Comment_length; I++) { | | | | | | |
| Comment_txt | 8 | Uimsbf | | | | |
| } | | | | | | |
| } | | | | | | |

• *Status_field* – This field returns the status of the *Purchase_req()*. If the POD has validated the purchase, then *Status_field* shall be set to 0x00. Otherwise it will be set to one of the following values. When there are more than one reason to deny the purchase, *Status_field* is set to the lowest applicable value.

| Table 8.10-K Status Field Values for Purchase Confirm | | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------|--|--|--|
| Status_field | Value (hex) | | | |
| Purchase Granted | 00 | | | |
| Purchase Denied – POD Module busy | 01 | | | |
| Purchase Denied – Unknown Transaction_ID or Option_ID | 02 | | | |
| Purchase Denied – Invalid PIN code | 03 | | | |
| Purchase Denied – Event already purchased | 04 | | | |
| Purchase Denied – Blackout is active | 05 | | | |
| Purchase Denied - Credit limit is exceeded | 06 | | | |
| Purchase Denied - IPPV slot limit is exceeded | 07 | | | |
| Purchase Denied – Spending limit is exceeded | 08 | | | |
| Purchase Denied – Rating limit is exceeded | 09 | | | |
| Purchase Denied – Check Comments | 0A | | | |

| Reserved | 0B-FF |
|----------|-------|

- *Purchase Denied: IPPV_slot_limit is exceeded*: The POD is unable to make additional IPPV purchases until it has reported all of its unreported purchases to the headend.
- *IPPVslot_ID* If *Status_field* is 0x00 (Purchase Granted) then *IPPVslot_ID* will contain the unique slot identifier that will later identify the purchasing transaction. If *Status_field* is any other value, *IPPVslot_ID* is reset to 0.
- *Comment_length, Comment_txt* These fields allow the POD Module to explain, using plain text, why the purchase request has been granted or denied.
- *Status_register* This field identifies the CA status of the program event. The designation of each bit is summarized in the following table.

| Table 8.10-L Status Register for Purchase Confirm | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| | VPU | OPU | UPU | AUT | FRE | REP | CAN | VIE |

- *VPU* is set to 1 when the program event has been purchased for viewing once.
- **OPU** is set to 1 when the program event has been purchased for taping once.
- **UPU** is set to 1 when the program event has been purchased for unlimited taping.
- *AUT* is set to 1 when the program event has been authorized.
- *FRE* is set to 1 when the free preview (initial or anytime) of the program event has been viewed.
- *REP* is set to 1 when the program event has been reported.
- *CAN* is set to 1 when the program event has been cancelled.
- *VIE* is set to 1 when the program event has been viewed.

8.10.3 Cancel_req() & Cancel_cnf()

The Host's navigation application shall use the *Cancel_req()* object to request a Cancellation of a particular purchased program offer.

The POD shall respond with the *Cancel_cnf()* object to the *Cancel_req()* request.

| Table 8.10-M Cancel Request Object Syntax | | | | |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|--|--|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic | | |
| Cancel_req() { | | | | |
| Cancel_req_tag | 24 | Uimsbf | | |
| Length_field() | | | | |
| IPPVslot_ID | 8 | Uimsbf | | |
| PINcode_length | 8 | Uimsbf | | |
| For (I=0; I<=PINcode_length; I++) { | | | | |
| PINcode_byte | 8 | Uimsbf | | |
| } | | | | |
| } | | | | |

| Table 8.10-N Cancel Confirm Object Syntax | | | | | |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------|--------|--|--|--|
| Syntax | Syntax # of bits Mnemonic | | | | |
| Cancel_cnf() { | | | | | |
| Cancel_cnf_tag | 24 | Uimsbf | | | |
| Length_field() | | | | | |
| IPPVslot_ID | 8 | Uimsbf | | | |
| Status_field | 8 | Uimsbf | | | |
| Status_register | 8 | Uimsbf | | | |
| Comment_length | 8 | Uimsbf | | | |
| For (I=0; I<= Comment_length; I++) { | | Uimsbf | | | |
| Comment_txt | 8 | Uimsbf | | | |
| } | | | | | |
| } | | | | | |

• *Status_field* – This field returns the status of the *Cancel_req()*. If the POD has validated the cancellation, then *Status_field* shall be set to 0x00. Otherwise it will be set to one of the following values. When there are more than one reason to deny the cancellation, *Status_field* is set to the lowest applicable value.

| Table 8.10-O Status Field Values for Cancel Confirm | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|--|--|
| Status_field | Value (hex) | | |
| Cancellation Granted | 00 | | |
| Cancellation Denied – POD Module is busy | 01 | | |
| Cancellation Denied – Unknown IPPVslot_ID | 02 | | |
| Cancellation Denied – Invalid PIN code | 03 | | |
| Cancellation Denied – Program already viewed or in progress | 04 | | |
| Reserved | 05-09 | | |
| Cancellation Denied - Check Comments | 0A | | |
| Reserved | 0B-FF | | |

8.10.4 History_req() & History_cnf()

The Host's navigation application shall use the *History_req()* object to request the history of all purchased and cancelled program events held in POD memory.

The POD shall respond with the *History_cnf()* object to the *History_req()* request.

| Table 8.10-P History Request Object Syntax | | | | |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|--|--|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic | | |
| History_req() { | | | | |
| History_req_tag | 24 | Uimsbf | | |
| Length_field() | | | | |
| PINcode_length | 8 | Uimsbf | | |
| For (I=0; I<=PINcode_length; I++) { | | Uimsbf | | |
| PINcode_byte | 8 | | | |
| } | | Uimsbf | | |
| } | | | | |

• **PINcode_length, PINcode_byte** – These fields allow the Host navigation application to pass the requested PIN code to get IPPV history on events that required a PIN Code validation for History. In case no PIN code or a wrong PIN code is supplied, only history on events that do not require PIN Code validation for History will be provided.

| Table 8.10-Q History Confirm Object Syntax | | | | |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|--|--|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic | | |
| history_cnf() { | | | | |
| history_cnf_tag | 24 | uimsbf | | |
| length_field() | | | | |
| status_field | 8 | uimsbf | | |
| comment_length | 8 | uimsbf | | |
| for (i=0; i<= comment_length; i++) { | | | | |
| comment_txt | 8 | uimsbf | | |
| } | | | | |
| ippvslot_nb | 8 | uimsbf | | |
| for (i=0; i<= ippvslot_nb; i++) { | | | | |
| ippvslot_id | 8 | uimsbf | | |
| purchase_type | 8 | uimsbf | | |
| purchase_price | 16 | uimsbf | | |
| status_register | 8 | uimsbf | | |
| purchase_date | 32 | uimsbf | | |
| cancel_date | 32 | uimsbf | | |
| event_date | 32 | uimsbf | | |
| title_length | 8 | uimsbf | | |
| for (j=0; j < title_length; j++) { | | | | |
| title_txt | 8 | uimsbf | | |
| } | | | | |
| text_length | 8 | uimsbf | | |
| for (j=0; j < text_length; j++) { | | | | |
| text_txt | 8 | uimsbf | | |
| } | | | | |
| descriptor_length | 16 | uimsbf | | |
| for (k=0; k < desc_length; k++) { | | | | |
| descriptor() | var | | | |
| } | | | | |
| } | | | | |
| } | | | | |

• *Status_field* – This field returns the status of the *History_req()*. If the POD has validated the History request, then *Status_field* shall be set to 0x00. Otherwise it will be set to one of the following values.

| Table 8.10-R Status Field Values for History Confirm | | | |
|------------------------------------------------------|-------------|--|--|
| Status_field | Value (hex) | | |
| History Granted | 00 | | |
| History Denied – POD Module is busy | 01 | | |
| Reserved | 02 | | |
| History Denied – Invalid PIN code | 03 | | |
| Reserved | 04-09 | | |
| History Denied - Check Comments | 0A | | |
| Reserved | 0B-FF | | |

- *Purchase_date, Cancel_date, Event_date* These fields contain respectively the purchase time, the cancel time and the starting time of the event. They are 32-bit unsigned integer quantities representing the time as the number of seconds since 12 am, January 6th 1980.
- If the *Cancel_date* field contains all FFFFs, this indicates that no appropriate value is available for this field.

8.11 Specific Application Support

The *Specific Application Support* resource is intended for use when a vendor-specific application, which resides in either the POD or the Host, needs to communicate a private set of objects across the interface. Support for this resource is required in the Host and POD Module. The POD shall establish at least one session for communication with the Specific Application Support Resource.

8.11.1 Specific Application Support Connectivity

The POD Module shall open one or more *Specific Application Support* (SAS) sessions for private communications between vendor-specific POD Module applications and private Host applications, as shown in Figure 8.11-1. The POD Module, as the initiator of the sessions, is responsible for associating each session (by session number) with the appropriate vendor-specific POD Application. When a private Host application is ready to establish a connection with POD Module, an SAS Connect Request (sas_connect_rqst) message is sent to the POD over any opened SAS session. The POD uses the private Host Application ID to identify the specific

SAS session that should be used for communication between the identified private Host Application and the appropriate vendor-specific POD Module application. This session number, along with the private Host Application ID is returned to the Host via the SAS Connect Confirm message (sas_connect_cnf). This operation establishes the communication path between a specific pair of applications (vendor-specific POD application, private Host application).



Figure 8.11-1

In some instances, the POD Module may receive an sas_connect_rqst before a session has been opened for the associated vendor-specific Application, as shown in Figure 8.11-2. In this case, the Pod Module shall establish the necessary SAS session and then respond with sas_connect_cnf.



Figure 8.11-2

8.11.2 Resource Identifier

| Table 8.11-A Specific Application Support Resource | | | | |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----|---|---|----------|
| ResourceClassTypeVersionIdentifier (hex) | | | | |
| Specific Application Support | 144 | 1 | 1 | 00900041 |

8.11.3 Application Objects

The **Specific Application Support** resource includes seven APDU's as described in the following table:

| Table 8.11-B Specific Application Support Objects | | | | | |
|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------|----------|---------------------------|--|--|
| Apdu_tag | Tag value (hex) | Resource | Direction Host <-> POD | | |
| sas_connect_rqst() | 9F9A00 | SAS | \rightarrow | | |
| sas_connect_cnf() | 9F9A01 | SAS | ÷ | | |
| sas_data_rqst() | 9F9A02 | SAS | \leftrightarrow | | |
| sas_data_av() | 9F9A03 | SAS | \leftrightarrow | | |
| sas_data_cnf() | 9F9A04 | SAS | \leftrightarrow | | |
| sas_server_query() | 9F9A05 | SAS | \leftrightarrow | | |
| sas_server_reply() | 9F9A06 | SAS | \leftrightarrow | | |

8.11.3.1 sas_connect_cqst() & cas_connect_cnf()

The Host shall send a sas_connect_rqst() APDU to the POD Module to establish a connection between a private Host application and the corresponding POD Module vendor-specific application. The Pod shall reply with an sas_connect_cnf() APDU to inform the Host of which SAS session is to be used for this connection.

| 8.11.3.1.1 | sas_connect rqst() |
|------------|--------------------|
|------------|--------------------|

| Table 8.11-C sas_connect_rqst Object Syntax | | |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| sas_connect_rqst(){ | | |
| sas_connect_rqst_tag | 24 | uimsbf |
| Length_field() | | |
| private_host_application_id | 64 | |
| } | | uimsbf |

8.11.3.1.2 sas_connect_cnf()

| Table 8.11-D sas_connect_cnf Object Syntax | | |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| sas_connect_cnf(){ | | |
| sas_connect_cnf_tag | 24 | uimsbf |
| Length_field() | | |
| private_host_application_id | 64 | uimsbf |
| sas_session_status | 8 | uimsbf |
| reserved | 16 | uimsbf |
| } | | |

where:

private_host_application_id This is a unique identifier of the private Host Application.

Informative Note: There is no need to register Private_Host_Application_IDs used by different manufacturers. Applications that make use of this resource are downloaded into the Host by the cable operator, and thus the application has knowledge of valid ID values that are expected from operator-supplied POD modules.

sas_session_status The status of the requested connection as defined in the following table.

| Table 8.11-E sas_session_status | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|--|
| sas_session_status | Value (Hex) | |
| Connection established | 00 | |
| Connection denied – no associated vendor- specific POD application found | 01 | |
| Connection denied – no more connections available | 02 | |
| Reserved | 03-FF | |

sas_session _nb The session number to be used for the designated Specific Application communications.

8.11.3.2 sas_data_rqst(), sas_data_av(), & sas_data_cnf()

Once a communication path has been established between the application pair (vendor-specific POD application, private Host application) via an SAS session, each of the applications can utilized the SAS APDUs to communicate with the other. The APDUs defined in this section are bi-directional in that they can originate from either side of the Host-POD Interface. The **sas_data_rqst**()APDU is used by one application to inform the other application that it is ready to process incoming data. The application which receives this APDU responds with an **sas_data_av**() APDU. When an application has data to send across the Host-POD Interface, an **sas_data_av**() APDU is sent. The receiving application responds with an **sas_data_cnf**() APDU to acknowledge that it is preparing to receive the available data.

| Table 8.11-F sas_data_rqst Object Syntax | | |
|------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| sas_data_rqst(){ | | |
| sas_data_rqst_tag | 24 | uimsb |
| Length_field() | | |
| reserved | 16 | uimsb |
| } | | |

8.11.3.2.1 sas_data_rqst()

^{8.11.3.2.2} sas_data_av()

| Table 8.11-G sas_data_av Object Syntax | | |
|----------------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| sas_data_av(){ | | |
| sas_data_av_tag | 24 | uimsb |
| Length_field() | | |
| reserved | 16 | uimsb |
| sas_data_status | 8 | uimsb |
| transaction_nb | 8 | uimsb |
| } | | |

8.11.3.2.3 sas_data_av_cnf()

| Table 8.11-H sas_data_cnf Object Syntax | | |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| sas_data_av_cnf(){ | | |
| sas_data_av_cnf_tag | 24 | uimsbf |
| Length_field() | | |
| reserved | 16 | uimsbf |
| transaction_nb | 8 | uimsbf |
| } | | |

where:

sas_data_status The status of the available data defined in the following table.

| Table 8.11-I sas_data_status | | |
|------------------------------|-------------|--|
| sas_data_status | Value (Hex) | |
| Data Available | 00 | |
| Data Not Available | 01 | |
| Reserved | 02-FF | |

Transaction _nb The Transaction number is issued from an 8-bit cyclic counter (1-255) and is used to identify each data transaction and to gain access to the available data. When data is not available, the transaction_nb will be set to zero.

8.11.3.3 sas_server_query() & sas_server_reply()

When data availability has been confirmed, an *sas_server_query()* APDU is sent to initiate the transfer of Application Specific data. The *sas_server_reply()* APDU shall be used to respond to the query and transfer data.

8.11.3.3.1 sas_server_query()

| Table 8.11-J sas_server_query Object Syntax | | |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| sas_server_query(){ | | |
| sas_server_query_tag | 24 | uimsb |
| Length_field() | | |
| reserved | 16 | uimsb |
| transaction_nb | 8 | uimsb |
| } | | |

^{8.11.3.3.2} sas_server_reply()

| Table 8.11-K sas_server_reply Object Syntax | | |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| sas_server_reply(){ | | |
| sas_server_reply_tag | 24 | uimsbf |
| Length_field() | | |
| reserved | 16 | uimsbf |
| transaction_nb | 8 | uimsbf |
| Message_length | 16 | uimsbf |
| for (i =0; i< message_length; i++) | | |
| { | | |
| message_byte | 8 | uimsbf |
| } | | |
| } | | |

8.12 Generic Feature Control Support

The *Generic Feature Control* resource enables the Host device to receive control of features which are considered generic to Host devices (set-top terminal, television, VCR, etc.). There are three aims to this resource: 1) to provide control of features that subscribers do not desire to set themselves, 2) to provide the ability to inhibit subscriber control and only allow headend control, and 3) to provide a mechanism in which a POD Module or Host device can be staged to a known value.

A resource is created which resides in the Host called the **Generic Feature Control** resource. If the Host reports this resource to the POD module, the POD module shall open only one session to the Host and should never close the session.

8.12.1 Parameter Storage

8.12.1.1 Host

The Host may provide non-volatile storage for the parameters associated with generic features on a parameter-by-parameter basis. These parameters shall be stored in the Host.

8.12.1.2 POD

There is no requirement for the POD module to store the generic feature's parameters although there is no requirement that it cannot.

8.12.2 Parameter Operation

8.12.2.1 Feature List Exchange

Immediately after the session to the Generic Feature Control resource has been established, the POD module shall query the Host to determine which generic features are supported in the Host (**feature_list_req**). After the POD module receives the generic feature list from the Host (**feature_list**), the POD module shall send its confirmation of the feature list to the Host (**feature_list_cnf**). The Host shall then query the POD module to determine which generic features are supported in the POD module and the headend (**feature_list_req**). The POD module shall send its feature list to the Host (**feature_list**) to which the Host shall send its confirmation (**feature_list_cnf**). This is called the generic feature list exchange.

| Headend | POD Madula | Host |
|---------|------------------------------|-------------|
| | Module open_session_reque | 1 |
| | open_session_respon | → |
| | feature_list_req | |
| | feature_list | ► |
| | feature_list_cnf | |
| | feature_list_req | |
| | feature_list | > |
| | feature_list_cnf | |
| | | |

Figure 8.12-1 Generic Feature List Exchange

If the generic feature list on the Host or the POD module changes, then the changed device shall send a generic feature list changed APDU to the other device (**feature_list_changed**). The other device shall then perform the generic feature list exchange to obtain the new list.



Figure 8.12-2 POD Module Feature List Change





8.12.3 Host to POD Module Transfer

After the feature exchange has occurred, the POD module may request the Host to send its feature parameters (**feature_parameters_req**). After any request, the Host shall send to the POD module the parameters for all the generic features in the Host's generic feature list (**feature_parameters**). The POD module shall reply with the confirmation (**feature_parameters_cnf**). The POD module may utilize these generic feature parameters, transfer them to the headend, or ignore them.



Figure 8.12-4 Host to POD Module Feature Parameters

Anytime any of the parameters of the generic features that are in the POD module generic feature list are changed in the Host, for whatever reason, the Host shall transmit these new parameters to the POD module (**feature_parameters**). The POD module shall reply with the confirmation (**feature_parameters_cnf**).



Figure 8.12-5 Host Parameter Update

The POD module may request, at any time the session is open and the generic feature list exchange has occurred, the current parameters in the Host. The POD module shall do this by sending a feature parameters request (**feature_parameters_request**) as shown in figure 8.12-4.

8.12.3.1 Headend to Host

It is not intended that the headend would transmit all the generic feature's parameters cyclically. Most of the parameters would only be transmitted once at the request of the user or for staging of the device. The generic feature's parameters which may need to be sent cyclically are the RF output channel, time zone, daylight savings, and rating region. The headend may send all or just some of the parameters.

The method in which the POD module receives the generic feature's parameters is proprietary to the POD manufacturer.

After the session has been established, when the POD module receives a message from the headend containing generic feature parameters, the POD module shall transfer this information to the Host (**feature_parameters**). The Host shall replace the parameters with the values in the APDU. If the POD module utilizes the parameters, it shall replace its internal parameters with the values in the message from the headend. The Host shall respond with the confirmation (**feature_parameters_cnf**). The Host may receive parameters for generic features which it does not support. The Host shall ignore any generic feature parameters that it does not implement.



Figure 8.12-6 POD Module to Host Feature Parameters

8.12.4 Resource Identifier

The following resource identifier shall be utilized for the Host to open in the POD module.

| Table 8.12-A Generic Feature Control Resource | | | | |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------|------|---------|------------------|
| Resource | Class | Туре | Version | Identifier (hex) |
| Generic Feature Control | 42 | 1 | 1 | 002A0041 |

8.12.5 Feature ID

Each generic feature shall have a unique ID assigned to it. This ID is the same for all APDUs. The following is a list of the features and their assigned feature ID.

| Table 8.12-B Generic Feature IDs | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|--|
| Feature ID | Feature | |
| 00 | Reserved | |
| 01 | RF Output Channel | |
| 02 | Parental Control PIN | |
| 03 | Parental Control Settings | |
| 04 | IPPV PIN | |
| 05 | Time Zone | |
| 06 | Daylight Savings Control | |
| 07 | AC Outlet | |
| 08 | Language | |
| 09 | Rating Region | |
| 0A | Reset PIN | |
| 0B | Cable URLs | |
| 0C | Emergency Alert Location Code | |
| 0D-3F | Reserved for future use | |
| 70-FF | Reserved for proprietary use | |

8.12.6 Application Objects

The following is a list of the application objects (APDUs).

| Table 8.12-C Generic Feature Control Objects | | | |
|----------------------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------|
| Apdu_tag | Tag value (hex) | Resource | Direction Host <-> POD |
| Feature_list_req | 9F 98 02 | Generic Feature Control | \leftrightarrow |
| Feature_list | 9F 98 03 | Generic Feature Control | \leftrightarrow |
| Feature_list_cnf | 9F 98 04 | Generic Feature Control | \leftrightarrow |
| Feature_list_changed | 9F 98 05 | Generic Feature Control | \leftrightarrow |
| Feature_parameters_req | 9F 98 06 | Generic Feature Control | \leftarrow |
| Feature_parameters | 9F 98 07 | Generic Feature Control | \leftrightarrow |
| Feature_parameters_cnf | 9F 98 08 | Generic Feature Control | \leftrightarrow |

8.12.6.1 Feature List Request

Either the Host or POD shall send this APDU to the POD module or the Host to query the generic features that it supports.

| Table 8.12-D Feature List Request Object Syntax | | |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| feature_list_req() { | | |
| feature_list_req_tag | 24 | uimsbf |
| length_field() | | |
| } | | |

• feature_list_req_tag Value = 0x9F9802

8.12.6.2 Feature List

After receiving the feature_list_req, the Host or POD module shall transmit this APDU to the POD module or Host which lists the generic features that the POD module and headend support control of.

| Table 8.12-E Feature List Object Syntax | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| Feature_list() { | | |
| Feature_list_tag | 24 | uimsbf |
| Length_field() | | |
| Number_of_features | 8 | uimsbf |
| For(i=0; i <number_of_features; i++){<="" td=""><td></td><td></td></number_of_features;> | | |
| feature_id | 8 | uimsbf |
| } | | |
| } | | |

- **feature_list_tag** Value = 0x9F9803
- **number_of_features** Number of features to report
- **feature_id** Assigned feature ID number as defined in section 8.12.5 of this document.

8.12.6.3 Feature List Confirmation

After receiving the feature_list APDU, the Host or POD module shall transmit this APDU to the POD module or Host to confirm receiving it.

| Table 8.12-F Feature List Confirm Object Syntax | | |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| feature_list_cnf() { | | |
| feature_list_cnf_tag | 24 | uimsbf |
| length_field() | | |
| } | | |

• feature_list_cnf_tag Value = 0x9F9804

8.12.6.4 Feature List Changed

Either the Host or the POD module shall send this APDU to inform the POD module or the Host that its feature list changes.

| Table 8.12-G Feature List Changed Object Syntax | | |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| feature_list_changed() { | | |
| feature_list_changed_tag | 24 | uimsbf |
| length_field() | | |
| } | | |

8.12.6.5 Feature Parameters Request

After the feature exchange has occurred, the POD module may, at any time, send the feature parameters request to the Host. The Host shall not send this APDU to the POD module.

| Table 8.12-H Feature Parameter Requ | lest Object S | yntax |
|-------------------------------------|---------------|----------|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| feature_parameters_req() { | | |
| feature_parameters_req_tag | 24 | uimsbf |
| length_field() | | |
| } | | |

• **feature_parameters_req_tag** Value = 0x9F9806

8.12.6.6 Feature Parameters

The Host shall send the **feature_parameters** of its feature list to the POD module after receiving a **feature_parameters_req** APDU or when any of the parameters in the Host's generic feature list are modified, except if the change is the result of receiving a **feature_parameters** APDU from the POD module. The POD module may ignore any feature parameters which it does not support.

The POD module may send the **feature_parameters** APDU at any time in response to a message that it receives from the headend.

| Table 8.12-I Feature Parameters Object Syntax | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| feature_parameters() { | | |
| feature_parameters_tag | 24 | uimsbf |
| length_field() | | |
| number_of_features | 8 | uimsbf |
| for(i=0; i <number_of_features; i++){<="" td=""><td></td><td></td></number_of_features;> | | |
| feature_id | 8 | uimsbf |
| if(feature_id == 0x01) { | | |
| rf_output_channel() | | |
| } | | |
| if(feature_id == 0x02) { | | |
| p_c_pin() | | |
| } | | |
| if(feature_id == 0x03) { | | |
| p_c_settings() | | |
| } | | |
| if(feature_id == 0x04) { | | |
| ippv_pin() | | |
| } | | |
| if(feature_id == 0x05) { | | |
| time_zone() | | |
| } | | |
| if(feature_id == 0x06) { | | |
| daylight_savings() | | |
| } | | |
| if(feature_id == $0x07$) { | | |
| ac_outlet() | | |
| } | | |
| if(feature_id == 0x08) { | | |
| language() | | |
| } | | |
| if(feature_id == 0x09) { | | |

```
rating_region()
       }
        if(feature_id == 0x0a) {
           reset_pin()
       }
        if(feature_id == 0x0b) {
           cable_urls()
       }
        if(feature_id == 0x0c) {
           ea_location_code()
       }
   }
}
```

| • | feature | _parameters_ | tag | Value = $0x9F9807$ |
|---|----------|--------------|-----|--------------------|
| | Itatui t | _parameters_ | _us | vulue 0A/1/00/ |

| • | number_of_features | Number of features to report |
|---|--------------------|------------------------------|
|---|--------------------|------------------------------|

- Assigned feature ID number as defined in section 7.1.2.5 feature_id
 - of this document.
- rf_output_channel RF output channel
- Parental Control PIN parameter p_c_pin
- p_c_settings Parental Control Settings parameter.
- IPPV PIN parameter. ippv_pin
- time_zone Time Zone parameter.

This feature is only utilized if the cable system crosses time zones. Daylight Savings parameter.

daylight_savings

> This feature is only utilized if the cable system encompasses both areas which recognize daylight savings and those which do not.

| • | ac_outlet | AC Outlet parameter. |
|---|---------------|--------------------------|
| • | language | Language parameter. |
| • | rating_region | Rating Region parameter. |
| • | reset_pin | Reset PIN's |
| • | cable_urls | URL list |

ea_location_code EAS location code

8.12.6.7 Feature Parameters Confirmation

When the POD module or Host receives the feature_parameter APDU, it shall respond with the feature parameters confirmation APDU.

| Table 8.12-J Feature Parameters Confirm Object Syntax | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|--------|
| Syntax # of bits Mnemonic | | |
| Feature_parameters_cnf() { | | |
| feature_parameters_cnf_tag | 24 | uimsbf |
| length_field() | | |
| number_of_features | 8 | uimsbf |
| for(i=0; i <number_of_features; i++){<="" td=""><td></td><td></td></number_of_features;> | | |
| feature_id | 8 | uimsbf |
| status | 8 | uimsbf |
| } | | |
| } | | |

| feature_parameters_tag | Value = 0x9F9808 |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| number_of_features | Number of features to report |
| feature_ID this document. | Assigned feature ID number as defined in section 8.12.5 of |
| status | Status of feature parameter00Accepted01Denied – feature not supported02Denied – invalid parameter03Denied – other reason04-FF Reserved |

8.12.7 Feature Parameter Definition

Each generic feature will have a parameter definition uniquely assigned. These parameters will be consistent for all APDUs. The following sections define these parameters if the specified features are implemented.

8.12.7.1 RF Output Channel Parameters

| Table 8.12-K RF Output Channel Parameters Syntax | | | |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|--|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic | |
| Rf_output_channel() { | | | |
| Output_channel | 8 | uimsbf | |
| Output_channel_ui | 8 | uimsbf | |
| } | | | |

- **output_channel** RF output channel. The Host shall ignore any value that it cannot accommodate and will use its previous value
- **output_channel_ui** Enable RF output channel user interface. If disabled, the Host shall disable the user from changing the RF output channel.
- 00-Reserved
 01-Enable RF output channel user interface
 02-Disable RF output channel user interface
 03-FF Reserved

| Table 8.12-L Parental Control PIN Parameters | | | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|--|--|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic | | |
| P_c_pin() { | | | | |
| P_c_pin_length | 8 | Uimsbf | | |
| For(i=0; i <p_c_pin_length; i++)="" td="" {<=""><td></td><td></td></p_c_pin_length;> | | | | |
| p_c_pin_chr | 8 | Uimsbf | | |
| } | | | | |
| } | | | | |

8.12.7.2 Parental Control PIN Parameters

- **p_c_pin_length** Length of the parental control pin. Maximum length is 255 bytes.
- **p_c_pin_chr** Parental control PIN character. The value is coded as defined in ISO/IEC 10646-1:1993, Information technology — Universal Multiple-Octet CodedCharacter Set (UCS) — Part 1: Architecture and Basic Multilingual Plane. The first character received is the first character entered by the user.

| 8.12.7.3 | Parental Control Settings Parameters |
|----------|--------------------------------------|
|----------|--------------------------------------|

| Table 8.12-M Parental Control Settings Parameters | | | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|--|--|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic | | |
| P_c_settings() { | | | | |
| P_c_factory_reset | 8 | Uimsbf | | |
| p_c_channel_count | 16 | Uimsbf | | |
| for(i=0; i <p_c_channel_count; i++)="" td="" {<=""><td></td><td></td></p_c_channel_count;> | | | | |
| reserved | 4 | '1111' | | |
| major_channel_number | 10 | Uimsbf | | |
| minor_channel_number | 10 | Uimsbf | | |
| } | | | | |
| } | | | | |

- **p_c_factory_reset** Perform factory reset on parental control feature. 00-A6 No factory reset A7 Perform factory reset A8-FF No factory reset
- **p_c_channel_count** Number of virtual channels to place under parental control
- **major_channel_number** For two-part channel numbers, this is the major number for a virtual channel to place under parental control. For one-part channel number semantics, see Table 5.27 of ANSI/SCTE 65 2002. Both two-part and one-part channel numbers shall comply with ANSI/SCTE 65.
- **minor_channel_number** For two-part channel numbers, this is the minor number for a virtual channel to place under parental control. For one-part channel number semantics, see Table 5.27 of ANSI/SCTE 65 2002. Both two-part and one-part channel numbers shall comply with ANSI/SCTE 65.
8.12.7.4 IPPV PIN Parameters

| Table 8.12-N IPPV PIN Parameters | | | | |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|--------|--|--|
| Syntax # of bits Mnemonic | | | | |
| IPPV_pin() { | | | | |
| IPPV_pin_length | 8 | uimsbf | | |
| for(i=0; i <ippv_pin_length; i++)="" td="" {<=""><td></td><td></td></ippv_pin_length;> | | | | |
| IPPV_pin_chr | 8 | uimsbf | | |
| } | | | | |
| } | | | | |

- **IPPV_pin_length** Length of the Purchase PIN. Maximum length is 255 bytes.
- **IPPV_pin_chr** Purchase PIN character. The value is coded as defined in ISO/IEC 10646-1:1993, Information technology. Universal Multiple-Octet Coded Character Set (UCS). Part 1: Architecture and Basic Multilingual Plane. The first character received is the first character entered by the user.

8.12.7.5 Time Zone Parameters

| Table 8.12-O Time Zone Parameters | | | |
|-----------------------------------|----|---------|--|
| Syntax # of bits Mnemonic | | | |
| Time_zone() { | | | |
| time_zone_offset | 16 | tcimsbf | |
| } | | | |

• **time_zone_offset** Two's complement integer offset, in number of minutes, from UTC. The value represented shall be in the range of -12 to +12 hours. This is intended for systems which cross time zones.

8.12.7.6 Daylight Savings Parameters

| Table 8.12-P Daylight Savings Parameters | | | |
|------------------------------------------|---|--------|--|
| Syntax # of bits Mnemonic | | | |
| Daylight_savings() { | | | |
| daylight_savings_control | 8 | uimsbf | |
| } | | | |

• **daylight_savings_control** Enable daylight savings time control in the Host. 00 Ignore this field

01 Do not use daylight savings 02 Use daylight savings 03-FF Reserved

8.12.7.7 AC Outlet Parameters

| Table 8.12-Q AC Outlet Parameters | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|--------|--|--|
| Syntax # of bits Mnemonic | | | | |
| Ac_outlet() | | | | |
| ac_outlet_control | 8 | uimsbf | | |
| } | | | | |

- ac_outlet_control AC outlet control
 - 00 User setting
 - 01 Switched AC outlet
 - 02 Unswitched AC outlet (always on)
 - 03-FF Reserved

8.12.7.8 Language Parameters

| Table 8.12-R Language Parameters | | | |
|----------------------------------|----|--------|--|
| Syntax # of bits Mnemonic | | | |
| Language() { | | | |
| language_control | 24 | Uimsbf | |
| } | | | |

• **language_control** Language setting using ISO 639, Code for the Representation of Names of Languages, 1988, and ISO CD 639.2, Code for the Representation of Names of Languages: alpha-3 code, Committee Draft, dated December 1994.

8.12.7.9 Rating Region Parameters

| Table 8.12-S Rating Region Parameters | | | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|--------|--|--|
| Syntax # of bits Mnemonic | | | | |
| Rating_region() { | | | | |
| Rating_region_setting | 8 | Uimsbf | | |
| } | | | | |

• **rating_region_setting** The 8-bit unsigned integer number defined in ATSC A/65, December 23, 1997, "Program and System Information Protocol for Terrestrial Broadcast and Cable" that defines the rating region in which the Host resides.

00 Forbidden 01 United States (50 states + possessions) 02 Canada 03-FF Reserved

8.12.7.10 Reset PIN

| Table 8.12-T Reset PIN | | | | |
|---------------------------|---|--------|--|--|
| Syntax # of bits Mnemonic | | | | |
| Reset_pin() { | | | | |
| reset_pin_control | 8 | Uimsbf | | |
| } | | | | |

• **reset_pin_control** Defines the control of resetting PIN(s).

The reset value is defined by the manufacturer and not covered in this document. 00 Do not reset any PIN

- 01 Reset parental control PIN
- 02 Reset purchase PIN
- 03 Reset parental control and purchase PIN
- 04-FF Reserved

8.12.7.11 Cable URLs

| Table 8.12-U Cable URLs | | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|--|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic | |
| Cable_urls() { | | | |
| number_of_urls | 8 | uimsbf | |
| for(i=0; I <number_of_urls; i++)="" td="" {<=""><td></td><td></td></number_of_urls;> | | | |
| url_type | 8 | uimsbf | |
| url_length | 8 | uimsbf | |
| for(I=0; i <url_length; i++)="" td="" {<=""><td></td><td></td></url_length;> | | | |
| url_chr | 8 | uimsbf | |
| } | | | |
| } | | | |
| } | | | |

- **number_of_urls** Number of URLs defined.
- **url_type** Type of URL, according to the following: 00 Undefined 01 Web portal URL

02 EPG URL 03 VOD URL 04-FF Reserved

- **url_length** Length of the URL. The maximum length is 255 bytes.
- **url_chr** A URL character.

The restricted set of characters and the generic syntax defined in RFC 2396, August 1998, T. Berners-Lee, R. Fielding, and L. Masinter, "Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax" shall be used.

8.12.7.12 Emergency Alert Location Code

| Table 8.12-V Emergency Alert Location Code | | | |
|--------------------------------------------|----|--------|--|
| Syntax # of bits Mnemonic | | | |
| EA_location_code() { | | | |
| state_code | 8 | uimsbf | |
| county_subdivision | 4 | uimsbf | |
| reserved | 2 | '11' | |
| county_code | 10 | uimsbf | |
| } | | | |

• **state_code, county_subdivision, county_code** These fields shall be as defined in SCTE 18 2002.

8.13 POD Module Firmware Upgrade

8.13.1 Introduction (Informative)

The POD module will require that its firmware be upgraded occasionally. The mechanism of upgrading this firmware is unique to each POD module manufacturer's system. This operation can be facilitated by adding the interface outlined in this section. New versions of the Homing and Host Control resources are utilized which encapsulates the previous operations of the resources but adds new operations for facilitating the firmware upgrade.

8.13.1.1 Summary (Informative)

8.13.1.1.1 Firmware Upgrade (Informative)

A POD module may be designed to be capable of having its firmware reprogrammed. Generally, this is implemented with flash memory or battery backed up RAM. Occasionally, this firmware will be upgraded. There are generally two paths in which the firmware can be upgraded: 1) over the cable network using the QAM inband channel, and 2) over the cable network using the QPSK OOB channel. Upgrade can be accomplished either by the methods defined in this document or by other methods. Since different system implementations affect the method of POD module upgrade, two types of upgrade states are offered, a "delayed" and an "immediate".

8.13.1.1.1.1 Delayed Upgrade (Informative)

When the POD module detects that a firmware upgrade is required and immediate upgrade has not been requested by the headend, then if the Homing resource is not already open, and the POD module requires utilizing the Homing resource, it will open a session to the Homing resource if it is not already open. The POD module will then wait until the open_homing APDU is received prior to beginning the upgrade. The POD module will inform the Host through the firmware_upgrade APDU that it will be doing a firmware upgrade. After receiving the firmware_upgrade_reply APDU, the POD module can use the Host Control resource to tune either the QAM or QPSK tuner in the Host to the appropriate frequency and modulation type. The Host will not modify the selected tuner until the POD module has indicated that the firmware upgrade has finished by sending the firmware_upgrade_complete APDU or a timeout condition occurs. The firmware_upgrade_complete APDU can also indicate to the Host whether a PCMCIA reset, POD reset, or no reset is required by the POD module. After receiving the firmware_upgrade_complete APDU, the Host will be free to change the QAM tuner.

The Host will send the open_homing APDU when it is in standby mode (power applied but in the "Off" state) as defined in [1].

8.13.1.1.1.2 Immediate Upgrade (Informative)

There are conditions in which the POD module will need to perform an immediate upgrade. When this is required, the POD module will have the option to use the interface upgrade mechanisms defined in this document. If using these mechanisms, the POD module will open the Homing resource, if it is not already open, and send a firmware_upgrade APDU. The Host will reply with a firmware_upgrade_reply when it is ready. The POD module will use the Host Control APDUs to tune either the QAM or QPSK tuner in the Host to the appropriate frequency and modulation type. The Host will not interrupt this process until it has either received a firmware_upgrade_complete APDU or a timeout condition occurs. An optional text message is included in the APDU to display to the user if the Host is not in standby.

Additionally, it is possible that an outside occurrence, such as a power failure, may cause the firmware to become corrupted. If this occurs, then the POD module is incapable of performing most of its functions. It is still able to perform some functions if ROM code is included in the design. Generally, this ROM code is fairly small since it is not upgradeable and is utilized only for verification of the firmware and loading the firmware in case of corruption. This ROM code, called bootloader

code in this document, must be carefully designed and verified since it cannot be modified.

The bootloader is called upon reset of the POD module CPU. It first performs basic initialization operations, then tests the main program memory to insure that it is valid, and if it is valid, starts executing out of the main firmware memory. The problem occurs that if the main program memory is not valid, then a mechanism is needed to allow for recovery of the main firmware.

For this rare condition, under this proposal, the bootloader will contain firmware which will allow the POD module to utilize the APDUs defined in this document for an immediate upgrade.

8.13.1.1.2 Inband Upgrade Considerations (Informative)

If the POD module utilizes the QAM inband channel for upgrades, then for normal upgrades it should utilize the delayed upgrade. The Host should then notify the POD module that it can upgrade when the Host is placed in the standby state by the user. If the Host has been in the on state for a long period of time or the POD module bootloader has detected corrupted memory, then an immediate upgrade is required in which case the Host will give control of the QAM tuner immediately to the POD module, independent of its state.

8.13.1.1.3 OOB Upgrade Considerations (Informative)

If the POD module utilizes the QPSK OOB channel for upgrades, then its operation will depend on whether applications can still operate while performing an upgrade. If they cannot, a delayed firmware upgrade should be used. The POD module will have to open the Homing resource and wait until the open_homing APDU is received prior to beginning the upgrade. If applications can operate during an upgrade, then an immediate firmware upgrade can be used.

8.13.1.1.4 Other Homing Operations (Informative)

If desired, the POD module can use the Homing resource for receiving other parameters over the inband channel when the Host is in standby state. If this is utilized, then the upgrade option should not be used so as to allow the Host to return to the on state at the users request.

8.13.2 Implementation

8.13.2.1 Introduction (Normative)

In order to meet these operations, there is a need for a mechanism whereby the POD module can inform the Host that a firmware upgrade is required, a optional text message to the user, and the type of upgrade path.

Note that it is the responsibility of the Host to inform the user when an immediate upgrade occurs and to determine when the recovery can occur for delayed upgrades.

8.13.2.2 Reset Implementation (Normative)

After the POD module has finished its firmware upgrade, it will either send the firmware_upgrade_complete APDU with the appropriate reset type or simply timeout based on the timeout type.

8.13.2.3 Host Operation (Normative)

While the POD module is performing its upgrade operation, its ability to support the normal POD interface may range from severely limited to entirely unimpaired. To accommodate any case some modifications to normal operation are required. The following is a list of those modifications as well as requirements to the Host.

1. If enabled by the firmware_upgrade APDU, the POD module shall still respond to the transport layer polls with a 5 second timeout. If the POD module fails to respond to the poll within 5 seconds, the Host shall perform a PCMCIA reset on the POD module.

2. The POD module may not be able to support session or application layer operations. The Host shall not initiate any new sessions or initiate any new application layer operations after transmitting a firmware upgrade reply APDU until either the firmware upgrade complete APDU is received or the POD module times out. However, the Host shall maintain all session connections so that if the POD module cancels the firmware upgrade, normal operation can continue. The POD shall provide a finite timeout value to the Host sufficient for all tuning and firmware update operations to complete before the timeout occurs, when the firmware update operation occurs under nominal network operating conditions. The timeout value is set taking into account relevant factors such as the nominal time for the POD module to determine and tune to the frequency or location of the update information, nominal repetition rate of the update information, and nominal size and transmission rate of the update information. Prior to initiating a firmware upgrade operation, the POD module shall close any sessions it will not be able to support during that operation, and restore sessions as necessary following completion (or cancellation) of the upgrade operation so that normal operation can continue. Note: If the POD module has set the response interval in the system time ing() APDU to a non-zero value, the Host may continue to transmit the system time() APDU to the POD module after transmitting a firmware upgrade reply() APDU.

3. If the download_timeout_period expires, the Host shall perform a PCMCIA reset on the POD module.

If the POD module sends a firmware_upgrade_complete with "No Reset Required", then the Host shall resume normal operation with the POD module in all respects, including timeout and reset operation.

8.13.2.3.1 Timeout Types (Normative)

The firmware_upgrade APDU includes a variable called timeout_type which defines the type of timeout the Host is to utilize during a firmware upgrade. This can include the normal 5 second transport timeout and/or a download timeout timer which starts from the last firmware_upgrade APDU received or neither. It is highly recommended that the POD module not use the "No timeout" option.

8.13.2.3.2 Transport Layer Timeout (Normative)

Since the POD module may be incorporating flash memory which takes a longer time to program than the transport layer timeout period (5 seconds), using option 02 or 03 on the timeout_type variable in the firmware_upgrade APDU will cause the Host to cease implementing this timeout until either a firmware_upgrade_complete APDU is received or the download_timeout_period from the last firmware_upgrade APDU has passed, in which case the Host will perform a PCMCIA reset.

8.13.2.4 Upgrade Cancellation (Normative)

If the POD module cancels its firmware upgrade, then it will send the firmware_upgrade_complete APDU with the reset type set to 02, "no reset required".

8.13.2.5 Flowchart (Informative)

Figure 8.13.1 is a flowchart which shows the POD module/Host interface which uses the POD module upgrade methods defined in this document.



Figure 8.13-1 Firmware Upgrade Flowchart

8.13.3 Homing Resource (Normative)

8.13.3.1 Homing Resource Definition (Normative)

As defined in section 8.8.1.1 of [1], the Homing resource allows for the POD module to request specific services from the Host when the Host is in a standby state. When the Host is in a standby state, only the "immediate" modes will be supported. This resource shall be modified to the following definition.

| Table 8.13-A Homing Resource | | | | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|---|---|----------|--|
| Resource Class Type Version Identifier (hex) | | | | | |
| Homing | 17 | 1 | 2 | 00110042 | |

The POD module will open the Homing resource when it requires a firmware upgrade or requires a service. The creation of Homing resource session includes the following objects:

| Table 8.13-B Homing Objects | | | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|----------|---------------------------|--|
| Apdu_tag | Tag value (hex) | Resource | Direction Host <-> POD | |
| open_homing | 9F9990 | Homing | \rightarrow | |
| homing_cancelled | 9F9991 | Homing | \rightarrow | |
| open_homing_reply | 9F9992 | Homing | ÷ | |
| homing_active | 9F9993 | Homing | \rightarrow | |
| homing_complete | 9F9994 | Homing | ÷ | |
| firmware_upgrade | 9F9995 | Homing | ÷ | |
| firmware_upgrade_reply | 9F9996 | Homing | \rightarrow | |
| firmware_upgrade_complete | 9F9997 | Homing | ÷ | |

8.13.3.2 open_homing (Normative)

The open_homing APDU is transmitted by the Host to the POD module when it enters the standby state, either from power up or from user action. It shall send this independent of whether the Host Control resource has a session active.

| Table 8.13-C Open Homing Object Syntax | | | | |
|----------------------------------------|----|--------|--|--|
| Syntax # of bits Mnemonic | | | | |
| open_homing() { | | | | |
| open_homing_tag | 24 | uimsbf | | |
| length_field() | | | | |
| } | | | | |

8.13.3.3 open_homing_reply (Normative)

The open_homing_reply APDU is transmitted by the POD module to the Host to acknowledge receipt of the open_homing APDU.

| Table 8.13-D Open Homing Reply Object Syntax | | | | |
|----------------------------------------------|----|--------|--|--|
| Syntax # of bits Mnemonic | | | | |
| open_homing_reply() { | | | | |
| open_homing_reply_tag | 24 | uimsbf | | |
| length_field() | | | | |
| } | | | | |

8.13.3.4 homing_active (Normative)

The homing_active APDU is transmitted by the Host to the POD module to inform the POD module that the homing request has been activated.

| Table 8.13-E Homing Active Object Syntax | | | | |
|------------------------------------------|----|--------|--|--|
| Syntax # of bits Mnemonic | | | | |
| homing_active() { | | | | |
| homing_active_tag | 24 | uimsbf | | |
| length_field() | | | | |
| } | | | | |

8.13.3.5 homing_cancelled (Normative)

If the Host was not informed that a firmware upgrade was in progress, then it shall have the capability to close the homing state.

| Table 8.13-F Homing Cancelled Object Syntax | | | | |
|---------------------------------------------|----|--------|--|--|
| Syntax # of bits Mnemonic | | | | |
| homing_cancelled() { | | | | |
| homing_cancelled_tag | 24 | uimsbf | | |
| length_field() | | | | |
| } | | | | |

8.13.3.6 homing_complete (Normative)

When the POD module no longer needs the homing function, then it can transmit a homing_complete to the Host.

| Table 8.13-G Homing Complete Object Syntax | | | | |
|--------------------------------------------|----|--------|--|--|
| Syntax # of bits Mnemonic | | | | |
| homing_complete() { | | | | |
| homing_complete_tag | 24 | uimsbf | | |
| length_field() | | | | |
| } | | | | |

8.13.3.7 firmware_upgrade (Normative)

If the POD module uses an in-band channel to perform a firmware upgrade, it shall transmit the firmware_upgrade APDU to the Host. If the upgrade_source is equal to the QAM inband channel (01), then the Host shall immediately give access to the inband tuner through the Host Control resource tune APDU. The Host shall not interrupt a firmware upgrade until it receives the firmware_upgrade_complete APDU. If the Host is not in the standby mode, then it shall display the user_notification_text. The user_notification_text shall be in ISO-8859-1. The estimated time to download in download time shall be in seconds.

| Table 8.13-H Firmware Upgrade Object Syntax | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|--------|--|--|--|
| Syntax # of bits Mnet | | | | | |
| firmware_upgrade() { | | | | | |
| firmware_upgrade_tag | 24 | uimsbf | | | |
| length_field() | | | | | |
| upgrade_source | 8 | uimsbf | | | |
| download_time | 16 | uimsbf | | | |
| timeout_type | 8 | uimsbf | | | |
| download_timeout_period | 16 | uimsbf | | | |
| text_length | 8 | uimsbf | | | |
| for(i=0; i <text_length; i++)="" td="" {<=""><td></td><td></td></text_length;> | | | | | |
| user_notification_text | 8 | uimsbf | | | |
| } | | | | | |
| } | | | | | |

upgrade_source – This shall define which path the POD module will use for its firmware upgrade.

| | Table 8.13-I Upgrade Sources | | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|--|
| Value Source Comment (hex) | | | | |
| 00 | Unknown | POD is not informing Host of source | | |
| 01 | QAM Inband Channel | Host Control resource will be used. | | |
| 02 | QPSK OOB Channel | Host Control resource will be used. | | |
| 03-FF | Reserved | | | |

download_time – the amount of time, in seconds, that it estimated to take for the firmware upgrade. If the value is 0000, then the value is unknown.

timeout_type – the type of timeout requested.

| Table 8.13-J Timeout Types | | | |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|--|
| Value Timeout Type Comment (hex) | | | |
| 00 | Both timeouts | Use both 5 seconds and download_timeout_period | |
| 01 | Transport timeout only | 5 second timeout on transport layer | |
| 02 | Download timeout only | Value in download_timeout_period | |
| 03 | No timeout | Host will not timeout POD module | |
| 04-FF | Reserved | | |

download_timeout_period – the amount of time, in seconds, after the Host has received the firmware_upgrade APDU that the Host should use to determine that the POD module has become unstable. After this time, the Host should perform a PCMCIA reset on the POD module. The Host's timer should be reset every time a firmware_upgrade APDU is received. A value of 0000 is defined to be an infinite timeout period.

user_notification_text – the text to be displayed to the user if the Host is not in standby mode.

8.13.3.8 firmware_upgrade_reply (Normative)

The Host will reply to the firmware_upgrade APDU. The POD module will not start the download operation until it receives this reply.

| Table 8.13-K Firmware Upgrade Reply Object Syntax | | | | |
|---------------------------------------------------|----|--------|--|--|
| Syntax # of bits Mnemonic | | | | |
| firmware_upgrade_reply() { | | | | |
| firmware_upgrade_reply_tag | 24 | uimsbf | | |
| length_field() | | | | |
| } | | | | |

8.13.3.9 firmware_upgrade_complete (Normative)

After the POD module has completed its upgrade, it will transmit the firmware_upgrade_complete APDU to the Host. Included in this is whether the POD module needs a PCMCIA reset (RESET signal active), POD reset (RS flag active), or no reset. If there is no reset, then the Host may take control of the tuner if the source was inband.

| Table 8.13-L Firmware Upgrade Complete Object Syntax | | | | |
|------------------------------------------------------|----|--------|--|--|
| Syntax # of bits Mnemonic | | | | |
| Firmware_upgrade_complete() { | | | | |
| firmware_upgrade_complete_tag | 24 | uimsbf | | |
| length_field() | | | | |
| reset_request_status | 8 | uimsbf | | |
| } | | | | |

reset_request_status – This contains the status of the reset for the POD module.

| Table 8.13-M Reset Request Status Values | | | |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|--|
| Value Source Comment (hex) | | | |
| 00 | PCMCIA reset requested | Host will bring RESET signal active then inactive. | |
| 01 | POD reset requested | Host will set RS flag and begin interface initialization. | |
| 02 | No reset required | Normal operation continues | |
| 03-FF | Reserved | | |

Note that if the POD module wishes to cancel the firmware upgrade, it can send the firmware_upgrade_complete APDU with no reset requested. Normal operation should continue if the Host receives this APDU.

8.14 Generic Diagnostic Support

The *Generic Diagnostic Support* resource enables the POD to request that the Host perform a diagnostic and report the status/results of the request to the POD. The POD may then use the diagnostic information to report diagnostics to the headend or the OSD diagnostic application. If the POD attempts to open a diagnostic support session and the Host replies that generic diagnostic support is not available, then the POD shall not request any diagnostic information from the Host.

The POD may request that the Host perform a diagnostic and report the status/result in response to a headend OOB message or SNMP message request to perform a diagnostic that is supported exclusively on the Host.

| Table 8.14-A Generic Diagnostic Support Resource | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Resource Class Type Version Identifier | | | | | |
| Generic Diagnostic Support2601101040041 | | | | | |

This creation includes the following objects:

| Table 8.14-B Generic Diagnostic Support Objects | | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|--------|----------------------------|----------|
| Apdu_tagTag Value (hex)ResourceDirection Host ⇔ POD | | | |
| Diagnostic_req() | 9FDF00 | Generic Diagnostic Support | + |
| Diagnostic_cnf() | 9FDF01 | Generic Diagnostic Support | → |

8.14.1 Diagnostic_req()

The POD's diagnostic application shall use the Diagnostic_req() object to request the Host perform a specific set of diagnostic functions and report the result/status of the diagnostics to the POD's diagnostic application.

| Table 8.14-C Diagnostic Request Object Syntax | | | |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|--|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic | |
| Diagnostic_req() { | | | |
| Diagnostic_req_tag | 24 | uimsbf | |
| length_field() | | | |
| number_of_diag | 8 | uimsbf | |
| for (i = 0; i < number_of_diag; i++){ | | | |
| Diagnostic_id | 8 | uimsbf | |
| } | | | |
| } | | | |

number_of_diag This field indicates the total number of self-diagnostic being requested

Diagnostic_id This field is a unique ID assigned to a particular diagnostic. The following is a list of diagnostics and their assigned diagnostic ID.

| Table 8.14-D Diagnostic ID Values | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| Diagnostic ID | Diagnostic | |
| 00 | Set-Top memory allocation | |
| 01 | Software version | |
| 02 | Firmware version | |
| 03 | MAC address | |
| 04 | FAT status | |
| 05 | FDC status | |
| 06 | Current Channel Report | |
| 07 | 1394 Port | |
| 08 | DVI status | |
| 09-FF | Reserved for future use. | |

8.14.2 Diagnostic_cnf()

The Host's diagnostic application shall use the *Diagnostic_cnf()* object to respond to a POD's request to perform a specific set of diagnostic functions.

| Table 8.14-E Diagnostic Confirm Object Syntax | | | |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|--|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic | |
| Diagnostic_cnf() { | | | |
| Diagnostic_cnf_tag | 24 | uimsbf | |
| length_field() | | | |
| number_of_diag | 8 | uimsbf | |
| for (i = 0; i < number_of_diag; i++){ | | | |
| Diagnostic_id | 8 | uimsbf | |
| Status_field | 8 | uimsbf | |
| if (status_field == 0x00) { | | | |
| if (Diagnostic_id == 0x00) { | | | |
| Memory_report() | | | |
| } | | | |
| else if (Diagnostic_id == 0x01) { | | | |
| Software_ver_report() | | | |
| } | | | |
| else if (Diagnostic_id == 0x02) { | | | |
| Firmware_ver_report() | | | |
| } | | | |
| else if (Diagnostic_id == 0x03) { | | | |
| MAC_address_report() | | | |
| } | | | |
| else if (Diagnostic_id == 0x04) { | | | |
| FAT_status_report() | | | |
| } | | | |
| else if (Diagnostic_id == 0x05) { | | | |
| FDC_status_report() | | | |
| } | | | |
| else if (Diagnostic_id == 0x06) { | | | |
| Current_channel_report() | | | |
| } | | | |
| else if (Diagnostic_id == 0x07) { | | | |
| 1394_port_report() | | | |
| } | | | |
| else if (Diagnostic_id == 0x08) { | | | |
| DVI_status_report() | | | |
| } | | | |
| } | | | |
| | | | |
| 5 | | | |

number_of_diag This field indicates the total number of self-diagnostic contained in the confirmation

Diagnostic_id This field echoes back the unique ID assigned to a particular diagnostic request.

status_field Status of the requested diagnostic.

| Table 8.14-F Status Field Values | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|--|
| Bit Value (Hex) | Status_field | |
| 00 | Diagnostic granted | |
| 01 | Diagnostic Denied - Feature not Implemented. | |
| 02 | Diagnostic Denied - Device Busy | |
| 03 | Diagnostic Denied - Other reasons | |
| 04-FF | Reserved for future use. | |

For Diagnostic_id values from 09 to FF, a Status_field value of 01 shall be returned.

8.14.3 Diagnostic Report Definition

Each applicable diagnostic confirm shall consist of a set of diagnostic reports that shall contain a specific set of parameters applicable to the requested diagnostics. The following sections define these reports and their associated parameters.

8.14.3.1 Memory Report

Memory reports shall contain the memory parameters associated with the Host.

| Table 8.14-G Memory Report Syntax | | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|--|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic | |
| memory_report() { | | | |
| number_of_memory | 8 | Uimsbf | |
| if (i=0; i <number_of_memory;)="" i++="" td="" {<=""><td></td><td>Uimsbf</td></number_of_memory;> | | Uimsbf | |
| memory_type | 8 | Uimsbf | |
| memory_size | 32 | uimsbf | |
| } | | uimsbf | |
| } | | | |

number_of_memory The number of memory types being reported in this
message.

memory_type

Designates the type of memory that is being reported.

| Table 8.14-H Memory Type Values | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------|--|
| Bit Value (Hex) | Memory Type | |
| 00 | ROM | |
| 01 | DRAM | |
| 02 | SRAM | |
| 03 | FLASH | |
| 04 | NVM | |
| 05 | Hard Drive | |
| 06 | Video Memory | |
| 07 | Other Memory | |
| 08 – FF | Reserved for future use. | |

memory_size Designates the physical size of the specified memory type. The units are kilobytes, defined to be 1024 bytes.

8.14.3.2 Software Version Report

Software version reports shall contain the software version parameters associated with the Host.

| Table 8.14-I Software Version Report Syntax | | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|--|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic | |
| software_ver_report() { | | | |
| number_of_applications | 8 | uimsbf | |
| for (i=0; i <number_of_applications;)="" i++="" td="" {<=""><td></td><td></td></number_of_applications;> | | | |
| Application_version_number | 16 | uimsbf | |
| application_status_flag | 8 | uimsbf | |
| application_name_length | 8 | uimsbf | |
| for (j=0; j <application_name_length; j++){<="" td=""><td></td><td></td></application_name_length;> | | | |
| application_name_byte | 8 | uimsbf | |
| } | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| application_sign_length | 8 | uimsbf | |
| for (j=0; j <application_sign_length; j++){<="" td=""><td></td><td></td></application_sign_length;> | | | |
| application_sign_byte | 8 | uimsbf | |
| } | | | |
| } | | | |
| } | | | |

number_of_applications Total number of applications contained within the report. **application_status_flag** Status of the software, either active, inactive or downloading.

| Table 8.14-J Software Status Flag Values | | |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------|--|
| Bit Value (Hex) | Software Status Flag | |
| 00 | Active | |
| 01 | Inactive | |
| 02 | Downloading | |
| 03-FF | Reserved for future use. | |

| Designates the number of characters required to |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| ASCII character, 8-bits per character, of string that |
| Designates the number of characters required to |
| |
| ASCII character, 8-bits per character, of string that |
| Designates the number of characters required to |
| ASCII character, 8-bits per character, of string that re. |
| |

8.14.3.3 Firmware Version Report

Firmware version reports shall contain the firmware version parameters associated with the Host.

| Table 8.14-K Firmware Version Report Syntax | | | |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|--|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic | |
| firmware_ver_report() { | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | 16 | uimsbf | |
| Firmware_version | 10 | umsbi | |
| Firmware_date { | | | |
| firmware_year | 16 | uimsbf | |
| firmware_month | 8 | uimsbf | |
| firmware_day | 8 | uimsbf | |
| } | | | |
| } | | | |

| firmware_version_length define the firmware version. | Designates the number of characters required to | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|--|--|
| firmware_version_byte | ASCII character, 8-bits per character, of string that | | |
| identifies the firmware version. | | | |
| firmware_date 32-bit | t numerical representation, in the form of | | |
| YYYYMMDD, which identifies the date of the firmware. | | | |
| firmware_year 16-bit | t designation of the firmware's year. | | |

firmware_month8-bit numerical representation of the firmware's month.firmware_day8-bit numerical representation of the firmware's day.

8.14.3.4 MAC Address Report

MAC address report shall contain the MAC address parameters associated with the Host.

| Table 8.14-L MAC Address Report Syntax | | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|--|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic | |
| MAC_address_report() { | | | |
| number_of_addresses | 8 | uimsbf | |
| for (i=0; i <number_of_addresses;)="" i++="" td="" {<=""><td></td><td></td></number_of_addresses;> | | | |
| MAC_address_type | 8 | uimsbf | |
| number_of_bytes | 8 | uimsbf | |
| for (j=0; j <number_of_bytes; j++)="" td="" {<=""><td></td><td></td></number_of_bytes;> | | | |
| MAC_address_byte | 8 | uimsbf | |
| } | | | |
| } | | | |
| } | | | |

number_of_addresses MAC_address_type Total number of MAC addresses contained on report Type of device associated with reported MAC address

| Table 8. | Table 8.14-M MAC Address Type Values | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| Bit Value (hex) | MAC Address Type | | | | |
| 00 | No addressable device available | | | | |
| 01 | Host | | | | |
| 02 | 1394 | | | | |
| 03 | USB | | | | |
| 04 | DOCSIS | | | | |
| 05 | Ethernet | | | | |
| 06 – FF | Reserved | | | | |

number_of_bytes MAC_address_byte The total number of bytes required for the MAC address. One of a number of bytes of that constitute the media access control (MAC) address of the Host device. Each byte represents 2 hexadecimal values (xx) in the range of 0x00 to 0xFF.

8.14.3.5 FAT Status Report

In response to a FAT Status Report request the Host shall reply with a FAT Status Report, unless an error has occurred.

| Table 8.14-N FAT Status Report Syntax | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|--------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Syntax | Syntax # of bits Mnemonic | | | | | | |
| FAT_status_report() { | | | | | | | |
| reserved | 4 | bslbf | | | | | |
| PCR_lock | 1 | bslbf | | | | | |
| modulation_mode | 2 | bslbf | | | | | |
| carrier_lock_status | 1 | bslbf | | | | | |
| SNR | 16 | simsbf | | | | | |
| signal_level | 16 | simsbf | | | | | |
| } | | | | | | | |

reserved Reserved bits shall be set to 1111_2 . Indicates if the FAT channel receiver is locked to the currently PCR lock tuned channel, $0_2 = not locked,$ $1_2 = locked.$ modulation mode Indicates if current forward transport is analog, 64-QAM or 256-QAM, $00_2 = analog,$ $01_2 = 64$ -QAM, $10_2 = 256$ -QAM, $11_2 = Reserved$ carrier_lock_status Indicates if the current carrier is lock or not locked, $0_2 = not locked,$ $1_2 = locked.$ SNR Numerical representation of the signal to noise ratio in tenths of a dB. signal_level Numerical representation of the signal level in tenths of a dBmV.

8.14.3.6 FDC Status Report

In response to a FDC Status Report request the Host shall reply with a FDC Status Report, unless an error has occurred.

| Table 8.14-0 FDC Status Report Syntax | | | | | |
|---------------------------------------|----|--------|--|--|--|
| Syntax # of bits Mnemonic | | | | | |
| FDC_report() { | | | | | |
| FDC_center_frq | 16 | uimsbf | | | |
| Reserved | 6 | bslbf | | | |
| carrier_lock_status | 1 | bslbf | | | |
| Reserved | 1 | bslbf | | | |
| } | | | | | |

FDC_center_frq Indicates the frequency of the FDC center frequency, in MHz. (Frequency = value * 0.05 + 50 MHz)

| | | | Ta | ble 8 | .14-P | FDC | Cen | ter F | requ | iency | / Val | ue | | | | |
|-------------------------------|----|----|----|-------|-------|-----|-----|-------|------|-------|-------|----|---|---|---|---|
| Bit | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Frequency (MS) Frequency (LS) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

reserved Reserved bits shall be set to 111111₂.

carrier_lock_statusIndicates if the current carrier is lock or not locked, $0_2 = not locked$,

 $1_2 = locked.$

8.14.3.7 Current Channel Report

In response to a Current Channel Report request the Host shall reply with a Current Channel Report, unless an error has occurred.

| Table 8.14-Q Current Channel Report Syntax | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------------|----|--------|--|--|--|--|
| Syntax # of bits Mnemonic | | | | | | |
| current_channel_report() { | | | | | | |
| Reserved | 2 | Bslbf | | | | |
| channel_type | 1 | Bslbf | | | | |
| authorizartion_flag | 1 | Bslbf | | | | |
| purchasable_flag | 1 | Bslbf | | | | |
| purchased_flag | 1 | Bslbf | | | | |
| preview_flag | 1 | Bslbf | | | | |
| parental_control_flag | 1 | Bslbf | | | | |
| current_channel | 16 | Uimsbf | | | | |
| } | | | | | | |

reserved Reserved bits shall be set to 11_2 . Indicates if channel is analog or digital, channel_type $0_2 = analog,$ $1_2 = digital$ authorization_flag Indicates if the set-top terminal is authorized for the currently tuned channel, $0_2 = not authorized,$ 1_2 = authorized. purchasable_flag Indicates if the currently tuned channel may be purchased, $0_2 =$ not purchasable, $1_2 =$ purchasable. purchased_flag Indicates if the currently tuned channel has been purchased, $0_2 = not purchased,$ $1_2 =$ purchased. preview_flag Indicates if the currently tuned channel is in preview mode, $0_2 = not in preview mode,$ $1_2 =$ in preview mode. parental_control_flag Indicates if the currently tuned channel is under parental control, $0_2 =$ channel is not blocked, 1_2 = channel is blocked. current channel Indicates the numerical representation of the currently tuned channel.

8.14.3.8 1394 Port Report

In response to a 1394 Port Report request the Host shall reply with a 1394 Port Report, unless an error has occurred.

| Table 8.14-R 1394 Report Syntax | | | | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------|----------|--|--|--|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic | | | |
| 1394_port_report() { | | | | | |
| Reserved | 3 | Bslbf | | | |
| loop_status | 1 | Bslbf | | | |
| root_status | 1 | Bslbf | | | |
| cycle_master_status | 1 | Bslbf | | | |
| port_1_connection_status | 1 | Bslbf | | | |
| port_2_connection_status | 1 | Bslbf | | | |
| total_number_of_nodes | 16 | Uimsbf | | | |
| } | | | | | |

reserved Reserved bits shall be set to 111₂. Indicates if a loop exists on the 1394 bus, loop_status 0 = no loop exists,1 = loop existsroot_status Indicates if the set-top terminal is the root node on the 1394 bus, $0_2 = \text{not root},$ $1_2 = is root.$ cycle master status Indicates if the set-top terminal is the cycle master node on the 1394 bus, $0_2 = not cycle master,$ 1_2 = is cycle master. port_1_connection_status Indicates if port 1 of the 1394 PHY is connected to a 1394 bus, $0_2 = not connected,$ $1_2 = \text{connected}.$ port_2_connection_status Indicates if port 2 of the 1394 PHY is connected to a 1394 bus,

 $0_2 = not connected,$

 $1_2 =$ connected.

total_number_of_nodes Indicates the total number of nodes connected to the 1394 bus. A maximum of 65535 nodes may exist, excluding the Host (a maximum of 64 nodes per bus with a maximum of 1024).

8.14.3.9 DVI Status Report

In response to a DVI Status Report request the Host shall reply with a DVI Status Report, unless an error has occurred.

| Table 8.14-S DVI Status Report Syntax | | | | | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------|----------|--|--|--|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic | | | |
| DVI_status_report() { | | | | | |
| reserved | 3 | bslbf | | | |
| connection_status | 2 | bslbf | | | |
| host_HDCP_status | 1 | bslbf | | | |
| device_HDCP_status | 2 | bslbf | | | |
| video_format | | | | | |
| { | | | | | |
| horizontal_lines | 16 | uimsbf | | | |
| vertical_lines | 16 | uimsbf | | | |
| frame_rate | 8 | uimsbf | | | |
| aspect_ratio | 2 | bslbf | | | |
| prog_inter_type | 1 | bslbf | | | |
| reserved | 5 | | | | |
| } | | | | | |
| } | | | | | |

reserved

All reserved bits shall be set to 1_2

connection_status Indicates if a connection exists on the DVI port:

 $00_2 =$ no connection exists,

 01_2 = device connected – not repeater,

 $10_2 =$ device connected - repeater ,

 $11_2 = reserved$

host_HDCP_status Indicates if HDCP is enabled on the DVI link,

 $0_2 = not enabled,$

 $1_2 = enabled.$

Device_HDCP_status Indicates the connected device's HDCP status (valid only when connection status is not equal to 00_2)

 $00_2 = \text{non HDCP device},$

 $01_2 =$ compliant HDCP device

 10_2 = revoked HDCP device,

 $11_2 = reserved$

video_format Indicates the current video format utilized on the DVI port as defined in the following fields:

horizontal_lines Indicates the number of horizontal lines associated with the video format on the DVI link.

vertical_lines Indicates the number of vertical lines associated with the video format on the DVI link.

frame_rate Indicates the frame rate associated with the video format on the DVI link as follows:

0x01=23.976 Hz 0x02=24 Hz 0x03=reserved 0x04=29.97 Hz 0x05=30 Hz 0x06=reserved 0x07=59.94 Hz 0x08=60 Hz. 0x09-0xFF=reserved

aspect_ratio Indicates the aspect ratio associated with the video format on the DVI link as follows:

 $00_2 = 4:3$ $01_2 = 16:9$ $10_2 = reserved$ $11_2 = reserved$

prog_inter_typeIndicates if the video is either progressive or interlaced onthe DVI link, $0_2 =$ Interlaced, $1_2 =$ Progressive $1_2 = 0$

8.14.3.10 HDMI Port Status Report

| Tab | le 8.14-T HDMI S | Status Report Synta | ax |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Syntax | | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| HDMI_status_report(|) { | | |
| Rreserved | | 3 | '111' |
| connection_s | tatus | 2 | Bslbf |
| host_HDMI_s | tatus | 1 | Bslbf |
| device_HDCF | P_status | 2 | Bslbf |
| video_format | | | |
| { | | | |
| horizontal_lin | es | 16 | Uimsbf |
| vertical_lines | | 16 | Uimsbf |
| frame_rate | | 8 | Uimsbf |
| aspect_ratio | | 2 | Bslbf |
| prog_inter_ty | be | 1 | Bslbf |
| Reserved | | 5 | Bslbf |
| } | | | |
| } | | | |
| onnection_status | $\begin{array}{c} 00_2 \\ 01_2 \end{array} \text{Device c} \end{array}$ | nection exists on the HD No connection exists onnected, no repeater onnected, with repeater | MI port |
| ost_HDMI_status | Indicates if HDCl | P is enabled on the HDM | II link |
| | 0_2 Not enabled. 1_2 Enabled. | | |
| evice_HDCP_status | Indicates the conr connection_status 00_2 Non HD 01_2 Complia | nected device's HDCP st is not equal to 00_2) CP device nt HDCP device HDCP device | atus (valid only when |
| ideo_format | Indicates the curr in the following f | | on the HDMI port as defin |
| orizontal_lines | Indicates the num format on the HD | ber of horizontal lines as MI link. | ssociated with the video |
| ertical_lines | rtical_lines Indicates the number of vertical lines associated with the video on the HDMI link. | | |

In response to a HDMI Status Report request, the Host shall reply with a HDMI Status Report, unless an error has occurred.

| frame_rate | Indicates the frame rate associated with the video format on the HDMI link as follows. |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0x01 23.976 Hz 0x02 24 Hz 0x03 reserved 0x04 29.97 Hz 0x05 30 Hz 0x06 reserved 0x07 59.94 Hz 0x08 60 Hz 0x09-0xFF reserved | |
| aspect_ratio | Indicates the aspect ratio associated with the video format on the HDMI link as follows: |
| $ \begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$ | |
| prog_inter_type | Indicates if the video is progressive or interlaced on the HDMI link, $\begin{array}{cc} 0_2 & \text{Interlaced} \\ 1_2 & \text{Progressive} \end{array}$ |

8.15 Support for Common Download Specification

This section specifies a common download protocol for POD-Host Interface for Host devices with OOB data channels as well as the In-Band (IB) Forward Application Transport (FAT) channel, consistent with the OpenCable Common Download Specification.

8.15.1 Overview of Protocol (Informative)

The protocol described in this document is based on the DSM-CC data carousel, which provides a format for data objects on a broadcast carousel. Since a common transport layer protocol for the in-band data channel (also known as the Forward Application Transport or FAT Channel) is MPEG-2, it provides a convenient starting point for a common protocol to download operating software code objects.

Control messages, specific to each type of Host device on the network, provide a locator (frequency of the transport stream, modulation mode, and PID) for the code file on the data carousel. A second approach is also defined where a source ID is utilized that identifies the program source associated with the virtual channel that is utilized for carrying the DSM-CC Download Information Indication message and/or the code file. The DSM-CC Download Information Indication message contains information pertaining to various firmware images that are available for download for particular Host devices.

This document uses the following terminology to differentiate between the two download methods:

- 1) **OOB Forward Data Channel method**: This method places the Code Version Table (CVT), as defined in section 3.5.5, in the OOB Forward Data Channel. The POD acquires the CVT via the OOB, filters the CVT and passes relevant information to the Host, as defined within this document. The Host utilizes the information passed to it via the POD to determine if a download is available. Download via this method is not possible without the POD. The data carousel is carried on the IB and contains the code file image. The Host only knows of the existence of a download via the POD.
- 2) **IB FAT Channel method**: This method places the Code Version Download Table (CVDT), as defined in section 8.15.2.2.1, in the IB FAT Channel. The Host acquires the CVDT via the IB, filters the CVDT and determines if a download available. The POD is not used for filtering or reception of the table. The data carousel is carried on the IB and contains both the code file image and the CVDT. The Host knows of the existence of a download via the utilization of a source ID or via interaction with the POD.

Currently, the transport and message protocols between the Headend and the POD are proprietary. In order for any Host to decode the message, extensions to the existing POD-Host interface specification, are required. These extensions provide a common network interface to the Host. This approach requires some additional functionality in the POD, in that the POD translates the proprietary network protocols to the common one specified in this document.

There are four types of code upgrade protocols that may be used by the MSO to download code. Additionally, there may be devices on the network for which the MSO does not have code objects, in which case, download would not be supported. Summarizing these options:

- In-band, broadcast
- In-band, command
- In-band, on-demand
- DOCSIS
- Not supported

This specification defines protocols for the first three download methods; the fourth method is well documented in the DOCSIS specification. These methods specified here are based on the DSM-CC data carousel. The broadcast model is used when the MSO is not dynamically adding files to the broadcast carousel. The command model

is used when the MSO has just added a new code file and wants all applicable Host devices to download the code file immediately. The on-demand case allows the MSO to dynamically add and remove code images as new subscribers come online and require upgrades.

8.15.1.1 Common Download via the OOB Forward Data Channel

In the broadcast model, data is broadcast over the OOB Forward Data Channel that relates the manufacturer and hardware version to the locator for the code object in a DSM-CC data carousel. The POD filters these data and passes the appropriate data onto the Host. The Host can then tune to the appropriate broadcast MPEG multiplex stream and set the PID filters to the PID that identifies the code object in the multiplex stream.

Because every possible code object might not be carried all of the time on the broadcast carousel, the MSO may provide an on-demand capability. In this method, when a Host signs onto the network, the Headend is informed that a new Host is now on-line. If a new version of the software for that Host is available, the Headend loads the object onto the carousel and sends a message back to the Host identifying the location of this code object. If a code object is not available, the Host is informed that download is unsupported. After the Host has finished downloading the object and authenticates it, it sends a 'done' message so that the Headend can unload that object from the carousel.

8.15.1.2 Common Download via the IB Forward Application Transport Channel

The IB FAT common download utilizes a combination of a source ID that identifies the program source associated with the virtual channel that is utilized for carrying the DSM-CC Download Information Indication message and/or the code file. In this scenario the cable plant:

- places the DSM-CC Download Information Indication message and/or the code file on a multiplex,
- assigns the source ID, to the virtual channel that the DSM-CC Download Information Indication message and/or the code file will be mapped to,
- and if the multiplex is encrypted, authorizes the Host for that service.

The Download Information Indication message contains the data necessary for the Host device to determine if the code file is targeted for that particular device. If the code file is applicable to the device, then the Host device downloads the code file. If the code file is not applicable or no code file is present on a different MPEG multiplex, as defined by the CVDT, then the Host device terminates the common download process.

The Host device parses the contents of the DSM-CC Download Information Indication message in order to determine if a download exists for the device. There are several methods in which the host will acquire the DSM-CC Download Information Indication message:

1. The Host device monitors the Version Number of the VCT. If the Version Number of the VCT changes, then the Host parses the VCT to see if the source ID is present. If the source ID is present, then when the Host is in a state that will not interrupt the user's service, the Host tunes to the channel defined by the source ID and parses the DSM-CC Download Information Indication message. If the DSM-CC Download Information Indicates that a download is available, then the Host downloads the firmware code file.

2. The headend informs the POD that the DSM-CC Download Information Indication message has been modified and likewise the POD informs the Host that the DSM-CC Download Information Indication message has been modified. The Host parses the VCT to see if the source ID is present. If the source ID is present, then when the Host is in a state that will not interrupt the user's service, the Host tunes to the channel defined by the source ID and parses the DSM-CC Download Information Indication message. If the DSM-CC Download Information Indication message indicates that a download is available, then the Host downloads the firmware code file.

3. The Host device periodically parses the VCT and searches for the applicable source ID. If the source ID is present, then when the Host is in a state that will not interrupt the user's service, the Host tunes to the channel defined by the source ID and parses the DSM-CC Download Information Indication message. If the DSM-CC Download Information Indicates that a download is available, then the Host downloads the firmware code file.

4. The headend commands the Host, via the POD, to tune to the channel defined by the given source ID or tune to the multiplex defined via the provided frequency, modulation type and mpeg number or PID, and parse the DSM-CC Download Information Indication message. If the DSM-CC Download Information Indication message indicates that a download is available, then the Host downloads the firmware code file.

After acquiring the Download Information Indication message, the Host device parses the Download Information Indication message and extracts the Code Version Download Table (CVDT), which is defined in this document. The CVDT is contained in the Private Data sector of the Download Information Indication message. The CVDT indicates the vendor ID and hardware version ID of all Host devices that have code files available for download. The CVDT also indicates the source ID associated with the multiplex and/or the frequency, modulation type and MPEG number of the stream that contains the applicable DSM-CC data carousel. The MSO may opt to place the applicable download object within the same stream that contains the CVDT; this would be indicated by the source ID being equal to the previously defined source ID. It is the responsibility of the Host device manufacturer to ensure that the device has the means to verify that the code file is valid.

8.15.2 OPERATIONAL DETAILS (Informative)

8.15.2.1 Download Protocols

8.15.2.1.1 In-band, one-way, broadcast

No interaction with the Headend is supported for this method. This method utilizes a DSM-CC data carousel. If a code file for a particular host is not defined in the CVDT, then code download for that host is not supported.

For the In-Band method that utilizes on the Download Info Indication message, the DSM-CC data carousel is placed on a multiplex that is defined by a source IDThe Host device parses the VCT for this source ID. If the source ID is found, then the Host device acquires the DSM-CC data carousel, extracts the Download Info Indication message and determines if a download is available. If a download is available, then the Host device downloads the code object.

8.15.2.1.2 In band, two-way, command

This method is applicable only for the case where the CVDT is delivered via the Download Info Indication message. This method uses interaction with the Headend and also uses the DSM-CC data carousel as defined in Section 8.15.2.1.1. After the Headend receives a new code file for a Host and/or a set of Hosts that requires an immediate download, the Headend loads the new code file onto the in-band broadcast carousel and modifies the Download Info Indication message accordingly. The Headend then instructs the POD to command the Host to download the code file. Headend knowledge of the existence of the device is made by prior POD-Host interaction and subsequent POD-headend interaction.

8.15.2.1.3 In-band, two-way, on-demand

This method requires interaction with the Headend and also utilizes the DSM-CC data carousel. When a Host receives a CVT and determines that an image download is required, it will either

a) always notify the POD module to notify the headend, or

b) it will look at the DSM-CC carousel location in the CVT. If it does not detect its image file, it will notify the POD module to notify the Headend. After the Headend is notified that a particular Host has requested a download, the Headend loads the appropriate code file onto the in-band broadcast carousel.

If no code file is available for a particular host, then code download for that host is not supported.

8.15.2.1.4 DOCSIS

This method uses a two-way connection through a DOCSIS cable modem and utilizes the Trivial File Transport Protocol (TFTP) method used by DOCSIS for its operational software. For Advanced Terminal devices (with embedded DOCSIS), in DOCSIS enabled networks, this mechanism can, at the discretion of the operator, be used to upgrade the operating software. Further elaboration of this method is beyond the scope of this specification.

8.15.2.2 DSM-CC Data Carousel

All software objects are transported over the in-band, broadcast channel via the DSM-CC data carousel. The Download Information Indication message, as defined in Section 8.15.2.2.1 of this document, and the message sequence for data carousel scenario, as defined in section 7.5 of ISO/IEC 13818-6, Extensions for DSM-CC, are supported. The DSM-CC specification does not require the DSM-CC control messages. The Host-POD control messages are defined in this specification.

8.15.2.2.1 Download Info Indication Message

The Download Info Indication message is only utilized when an MSO is broadcasting a download utilizing the source ID method for download as defined in section 8.15.1.2. The DSM-CC Download Info Indication message is extended to include a Code Version Download Table (CVDT). The CVDT is placed in the Private Data bytes of the Download Info Indication message. The format of the CVDT is defined in the following table.
| Table 8.15-A Code Version Download Table | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| <pre>code_version_download_table() {</pre> | | |
| code_version_download_table_tag | 24 | uimsbf |
| length_field() | | |
| number_of_entries | 8 | uimsbf |
| <pre>For(i=0; i<number_of_entries; i++){<="" pre=""></number_of_entries;></pre> | | |
| vendor_id | 24 | uimsbf |
| hardware_version_id | 32 | uimsbf |
| download_type | 4 | uimsbf |
| download_command | 4 | uimsbf |
| location_type | 8 | uimsbf |
| <pre>if(location_type == 0){</pre> | | |
| Source_id | 16 | uimsbf |
| } | | |
| else{ | | |
| Frequency_vector | 16 | uimsbf |
| transport_value | 8 | uimsbf |
| Stream_ID | 8 | uimsbf |
| if(stream_ID == 0){ | | |
| reserved | 3 | uimsbf |
| PID | 13 | uimsbf |
| } | | |
| Else{ | | |
| Program_number | 16 | uimsbf |
| } | | |
| } | | |
| code_file_name_length | 8 | uimsbf |
| <pre>For(i=0;I<code_file_name_length;i++){< pre=""></code_file_name_length;i++){<></pre> | | |
| code_file_name_byte | 8 | uimsbf |
| } | | |
| <pre>code_verification_certificate()</pre> | | |
| } | | |
| } | | |

code_version_download_tag Value = 0xFF0FFF

number_of_entries Defines the total number of entries that are contained within the CVDT.

vendor_ID Organizationally Unique Identifier (OUI) assigned to the Host device vendor by the IEEE. A value of 0x000000 is not valid.

hardware_version_id Unique Hardware identifier assigned to each type of hardware from a particular vendor. A value of 0x0000 is not permitted.

download_type Defines the type of download.

- 00 Broadcast
- 01 Command
- 02 On Demand
- 03 DOCSIS TFTP

04 Download unsupported – no code object available. In this case, the remaining fields will have no meaning and must be set to all zeros.

download_command

- 00 Download now
- 01 Deferred Download
- 02 Download now, no exceptions
- 03-0F Reserved

location_type Defines the method in which the Host device is to utilize to acquire the DSM-CC stream. A value of zero (0) indicates that the stream location is defined in the channel map and may be found via the defined source ID. A value other than zero indicates that the Host device is to use the frequency, modulation type and PID or program number to acquire the DSM-CC stream.

source_id The VCT source ID that is associated with each program source. The source ID is utilized to locate the frequency that the DSC-CC data carousel is multiplexed on.

frequency_vectorFrequency of the download carousel. The frequency is coded as the number of 0.25 MHz intervals. If download_type parameter equals 03, this parameter must be set to 0.

| transport_value | Value Type |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| 00 | DOCSIS channel |
| 01 | FAT channel/QAM-64 |
| 02 | FAT channel/QAM-256 |
| 03-FF | Reserved |

stream_ID Defines the way in which the DSM-CC is to be located. A value of zero (0) indicates that the DSM-CC stream is to be located utilizing the defined PID.

Any other value indicates that the stream is to be located utilizing the program number.

PID Packet identifier of the stream that contains the code file.

program_number Defines the program number in which the DSM-CC stream resides.

code_file_name_length Length of the code file name

code_file_name_byte Name of the software upgrade file on the DSM-CC carousel. This is the name of the Code File [3] that is on the data carousel as well as in Host Flash.

code_verification_certificate Authentication certificate(s) per DOCSIS SCTE 23-2 2002

8.15.2.3 Download Operation

The download method used by the operator is optional and in part depends upon the capabilities of the network and the Hosts on the network.

8.15.2.3.1 One-Way Operation- OOB Forward Data Channel

The following figure describes the communication between the Headend and the POD module and the POD module and the Host.



Figure 8.15-1 One-Way Operation

After a session is opened between the POD and the Host, the POD requests identification information from the Host. The Host responds with the vendor_id (OUI), hardware_version_id from the Host (host_info_response). The POD module uses this data to filter the Code Version Tables (CVT) that are broadcast over the OOB channel. Each CVT corresponds to a different hardware and software version. The locator is contained within the CVT and is the frequency of the transport stream and the PID for the specific data carousel of the code file. The POD transmits the proper CVT to the host. The Host determines if a download is required by comparing the code file name in the CVT to that store in the Host. If a download is required, the Host begins to download the code object by tuning to the proper in-band frequency and selecting the proper PID in the in-band multiplex stream.

8.15.2.3.2 One-Way Operation - IB Forward Application Transport Channel

The following figure describes the communication between the Headend and the POD module and the POD module and the Host.



Figure 8.15-2 One-Way Operation – IB FAT Channel

8.15.2.3.3 Two-way Operation- OOB Forward Data Channel

The two-way operation is similar to the one-way operation, except that there is some handshaking between the POD and the Headend. After the Host receives a CVT and determines that a new code image exists, it is told in the CVT to either notify the POD module to inform the Headend of this hardware or to first determine if its code image is already loaded on the DSM-CC carousel and only notify the POD module to inform the hardware if it is not. If download is not supported, the default CVT is sent ("Download Unsupported", download_type equals 03, see section 8.15.3.5).



Figure 8.15-3 Two-Way Operation

8.15.2.3.4 Two-way Operation - Command Operation - IB Forward Application Transport Channel

The following figures describe the communication between the Headend and the Host for IB Forward Application Transport Channel command downloads.



Figure 8.15-4 Two Way - Command Operation - IB FAT Channel



Figure 8.15-5 Two Way - Command Operation - IB FAT Channel (continued)

8.15.2.3.5 Two-way Operation - On-Demand Operation - IB Forward Application Transport Channel

The following figure describes the communication between the Headend and the Host for on-demand downloads.



Figure 8.15-6 Two Way – On-Demand Operation - IB FAT Channel (continued)

8.15.2.4 Summary

The following figure summarizes the flow of events and the decision points in the download operation.



Figure 8.15-7 Flow chart summarizing download operations

8.15.2.4.1 OOB Forward Data Channel Summary



Figure 8.15-8 Flow chart summarizing download operations for OOB Forward Data Channel method

Host -> POD host info message VCT Version Number Change? YĖS NO ¥ POD -> Host host download command? Exit from Download Protocol А YES location type : Parse VCT YES NO Extract Multiplex Frequency and Modulation mode from < Source ID exists' message YÉS ♦ Extract Program Number and obtain Multiplex Frequency and Modulation mode from VCT Tune to Multiplex Acquire PMT and parse stream type(s) NO Boot from Flash stream type 0x08 All stream types А YES-NO parsed Flash YES Image Parse stream and extract DSM-CC Download Info Indication Message Host -> POD host download control (host command = 0x01) Download Complete? YES NO NO ransaction changed? ıр NO -) А Host -> POD host download control (host command = 0x00) . On-Demand? YES YES Extract CVC and Acquire DSM--CC that contains code files Examine contents of message and determine if download is applicable. Download Applicable Download code file

8.15.2.4.2 IB Forward Application Transport Channel Summary

Figure 8.15-9 Flow chart summarizing broadcast download operations

8.15.2.5 Code Authentication

After a code image is downloaded into the set top box and before it is placed in permanent storage in non-volatile memory, the image is authenticated using the SCTE 23-2 2002 code authentication process regardless of the method used to download the file. This method specifies a particular structure to the code file (PKCS#7 compliant). The code file consists of the manufacturer's Code Verification Signature (CVS), and X.509 Code Verification Certificate (CVC) signed by the root CA, and the signed code image that is compatible with the target.

8.15.3 System Control Resource (Normative)

This section provides details of Host-POD messages. A new resource, the System Control resource, is introduced for handling revision control and download operations. Applications must exist in the POD to support this resource. New Application Protocol Data Units (APDU) are also introduced.

8.15.3.1 Resource Identifier

The following resource identifier associated with the System Control resource shall reside in the Host and is optional for use by the POD module. The POD shall open a session to this resource in the Host and shall never close it. Only one session is supported by the Host.

| Table 8.15-B Resource Identifier | | | | |
|----------------------------------|-------|------|---------|-------------|
| Resource | Class | Туре | Version | Identifier |
| System Control | 43 | 1 | 1 | 0x002B0041* |

*proposed value

8.15.3.2 Application Objects (APDUs)

The following table is a list of the APDUs that are required for this specification. The host_info_request, host_info_response and the host_download_control APDUs are required for both download methods. The code_version_table and code_version_table_reply APDUs are exclusively utilized for the OOB Forward Data Channel download method. The host_download_command APDU is exclusively utilized for the IB FAT Channel download method.

| Table 8.15-C Table of Application Protocol Data Units | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|----------------|---------------------------|
| APDU_tag | Tag value (hex) | Resource | Direction Host <-> POD |
| Host_info_request | 9F9C00 | System Control | ÷ |
| Host_info_response | 9F9C01 | System Control | \rightarrow |
| Code_version_table | 9F9C02 | System Control | ÷ |
| Code_version_table_reply | 9F9C03 | System Control | \rightarrow |
| Host_download_control | 9F9C04 | System Control | \rightarrow |
| Host_download_command | 9F9C05 | System Control | ÷ |

8.15.3.3 host_info_request

After the POD module opens a session to the System Control resource, the POD module shall query the Host to determine its vendor ID and hardware version ID and optional additional parameters. The POD also must inform the Host as to what type of download the Headend is going to use to update the Host. The POD module shall use at least the vendor ID and hardware version ID to filter the CVT. If a download is in progress, the Host shall terminate it.

| Table 8.15-D host_info_request | | |
|--------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| host_info_request() { | | |
| host_info_request_tag | 24 | Uimsbf |
| length_field() | | |
| supported_download_type | 8 | Uimsbf |
| } | | |

host_info_request_tag Value = 0x9F9C00

supported_download_type Defines the type of Common Download method utilized by the Headend.

- 00 OOB Forward Data Channel method
- 01 IB FAT Channel method
- 02 DOCSIS only
- 03 FF Reserved

Note: this document does not define DOCSIS download requirements. A headend need not use this ADPU to inform the Host that updates are performed via a DOCSIS download.

8.15.3.4 host_info_response

The Host shall respond to the POD module query with its vendor ID and hardware version ID.

| Table 8.15-E host_info_response | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| Host_info_response() { | | |
| Host_info_response_tag | 24 | Uimsbf |
| Length_field() | | |
| Vendor_id | 24 | Uimsbf |
| Hardware_version_id | 32 | Usmsbf |
| Number_of_descriptors | 8 | Uimsbf |
| for(I=0;i <number_of_descriptors;i++){< td=""><td></td><td></td></number_of_descriptors;i++){<> | | |
| Descriptor_tag | 8 | Uimsbf |
| Descriptor_len | 8 | Usmsbf |
| Descriptor_data() | | |
| } | | |
| } | | |

host_info_response_tag Value = 0x9F9C01

vendor_id Organizationally Unique Identifier (OUI) assigned to the Host device vendor by the IEEE. A value of 0x000000 is not valid.

hardware_version_id Unique Hardware identifier assigned to each type of hardware from a particular vendor.

number_of_descriptors Indicates the number of descriptors defined in the following fields

descriptor_tag

 $0 - descriptor_data$ is Host proprietary data. The maximum value for descriptor_len is 128.

1-127 – reserved for future standardization

128-255 – optional, for use by POD-Host pairs, where both POD and Host support the same implementation of the Specific Application Resource. Other POD-Host pairs shall skip these descriptors using descriptor_len value.

8.15.3.5 code_version_table

The Headend broadcasts all CVTs via the OOB-FDC. After the POD receives the host_info_response message from the Host, the POD module shall only then start filtering any CVT's it receives from the Headend and passing them to the Host. The POD module shall pass a CVT to the Host only if it meets all of the following criteria:

- CVT vendor_id matches Host vendor_id, and
- CVT hardware_version_id matches Host hardware_version_id

Only one code object shall be on the carousel at any given time for a given vendor_id and hardware_id.

The Host acknowledges the receipt of the CVT and responds with an OK or an appropriate error code message in the code_version_table_reply. The POD continues to transmit the CVT until it receives the ACK message. If a new, different CVT is received during this time, the POD module shall transmit it to the Host, if appropriate to the selection criteria described above.

It is up to the Host to determine if a download is required, the POD module shall not determine this. When the Host receives a valid CVT (the OUI and hardware_version_id match), the Host shall determine if the code file name in the CVT matches the code file name stored in non-volatile memory when the code was last updated. If the file names do not match, the action of the Host shall be according to the download_command parameter. If the length of the CVT software upgrade filename is different than the length of the Host software upgrade filename, then they shall be declared to be different, independent of their contents. If the download_command parameter equals 03 (download now, no exceptions), then the Host shall ignore the code file name that is stored in non-volatile memory and shall begin to download of the file referred to in the CVT.

It is also up to the Host design to handle error conditions without lockouts or wait states as well as to authenticate the vendor parameters and download code. The Host shall assume that the POD module is operating correctly.

The use of frequency vector and PID avoids the use of the virtual channel table, which assumes that the entire SI is being processed. When the download is ondemand (download_type parameter equal 01), the POD may send a CVT with frequency and PID equal to 0, to signify that the location of the code file is not known. In this case, an additional CVT with the frequency and PID should be sent when the location is known.

| Table 8.15-F code version table | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| code_version_table() { | | |
| code_version_table_tag | 24 | Uimsbf |
| length_field() | | |
| number of descriptors | 8 | Uimsbf |
| for(i=0;i <number descriptors;i++){<="" of="" td=""><td></td><td></td></number> | | |
| descriptor_tag | 8 | Uimsbf |
| descriptor_len | 8 | Usmsbf |
| descriptor_data() | | |
| } | | |
| download_type | 4 | Uimsbf |
| download_command | 4 | Uimsbf |
| frequency_vector | 16 | Uimsbf |
| transport_value | 8 | Uimsbf |
| Reserved | 3 | Uimsbf |
| PID | 13 | Uimsnf |
| code_file_name_length | 8 | Uimsbf |
| for(i=0;i <software_filename_length;i++){< td=""><td></td><td></td></software_filename_length;i++){<> | | |
| code_file_name_byte | 8 | Uimsbf |
| } | | |
| code_verification_certificate() | | |
| } | | |

In a program corruption case, the CVT may not be available.

download_status_tag Value = 0x9F9C02

number_of_descriptors must be greater than 2, mandatory descriptors are vendor_id and hardware_version_id

descriptor_tag

0 – descriptor_data is vendor_id (mandatory, descriptor_len = 3). Unique Identifier (the vendor's OUID) assigned to each vendor.

1 – descriptor_data is hardware_version_id (mandatory, descriptor_len = 4), Unique Hardware identifier assigned to each type of hardware from a particular vendor.

2 – descriptor_data is Host proprietary data. The maximum value for descriptor_len is 128.

3-127 – reserved for future standardization

128-255 – optional, for use by POD-Host pairs, where both POD and Host support the same implementation of the Specific Application Resource. Other POD-Host pairs shall skip these descriptors using descriptor_len value

download _type Type of download (supplied by Headend) :

- 00 One-way, broadcast
- 01 Always On Demand
- 02 DOCSIS tftp

03 Download unsupported - no code object available. In this case, the

code_file_name_length, frequency_vector and PID parameters must be equal to zero. NOTE: If the Host does not receive a CVT, then it shall assume that no code object is available.

04 Conditional On Demand

download_command

- 00 Download now
- 01 Deferred download
- 02 Download now, no exceptions
- 03 Reserved

frequency_vector Frequency of the download carousel. The frequency is coded as the number of 0.25 MHz intervals. If download_type parameter equals 02, this parameter shall be set to 0

transport_value

| Value | Туре |
|-------|--------|
| 00 | DOCGIG |

- 00 DOCSIS channel
- 01 FAT channel/QAM-64
- 02 FAT channel/QAM-256
- 03-FF Reserved

PID Stream identifier of the code file. If download_type parameter equals 02, this parameter shall be set to 0.

code_file_name_length length of code file name

code_file_name_byte Name of software upgrade file on carousel. This is the name of the Code File (see SCTE 23-2 2002) that is on the broadcast carousel as well as in Host Flash

code_verification_certificate Authentication certificate(s) per SCTE 23-2 2002

8.15.3.6 code_version_table_reply

When the Host receives a CVT APDU, it shall respond with the code_version_table_reply APDU. This response serves as an acknowledgement to the receipt of the CVT and an error code if necessary. When the POD receives this APDU, it shall stop sending CVTs to the Host.

| Table 8.15-G code_version_table_reply | | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| code_version_table_reply() { | | |
| code_version_table_reply_tag | 24 | uimsbf |
| length_field() | | |
| host_response | 8 | uimsbf |
| } | | |

download_status_reply_tag Value = 0x9F9C03

host_response host response to download status:

- 00 ACK, no error
- 01 Invalid vendor ID or hardware version ID.
- 02 Other parameter error
- 03-FF Reserved

8.15.3.7 host_download_control

This APDU is used when the download_type parameter equals 01 (on-demand download) in CVT.

If the Host was told to do conditional_on_demand, the Host shall first determine if its new download image is already loaded on the DSM-CC carousel. If it is, then it shall send the host_download_control with the host_command as (00) start download.

If the Host was told to do conditional_on_demand and it does not find its download image, or it was told to do always_on_demand, then it shall send the host_download_control with the host_command as (02), notify_headend. The POD module shall then send a host_notification to the Headend along with the vendor_id and hardware_version_id. The Headend shall then send the host_download_control with the host command as (00) start download.

When the Host has successfully authenticated the code file and it had request that the POD module send the host_notification, it shall send an additional host_download_control APDU with a host_command parameter equal to 01 (done).

The POD shall then send the done message to the Headend along with the vendor_id and hardware_version_id so that the code file can be unloaded from the carousel.

| Table 8.15-H host_download_control table | | |
|------------------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| <pre>host_download_control() {</pre> | | |
| host_download_control_tag | 24 | Uimsbf |
| length_field() | | |
| host_command | 8 | Uimsbf |
| } | | |

host_download_control_tag Value = 0x9F9C04

host_command host command:

- 00 Start download
- 01 Download Completed sent when done receiving data.
- 02 Notify headend
- 03-FF Reserved

8.15.3.8 host_download_command

The POD shall utilize the host_download_command APDU to command a Host to initiate a download when using the two-way Inband FAT channel commanded download method. The POD shall also utilize this APDU to command a Host to use the values defined within the APDU to locate CVDTs instead of the source ID when using the one-way Inband Forward Application Transport Channel broadcast download method

| Table 8.15-I host_download_command | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------|----------|
| Syntax | # of bits | Mnemonic |
| <pre>host_download_command() {</pre> | | |
| host_download_control_tag | 24 | Uimsbf |
| length_field() | | |
| host_command | 8 | Uimsbf |
| location_type | 8 | uimsbf |
| <pre>if(location_type == 00){</pre> | | |
| source_id | 16 | uimsbf |
| } | | |
| <pre>if(location_type == 01){</pre> | | |
| frequency_vector | 16 | uimsbf |
| transport_value | 8 | uimsbf |
| stream_ID | 8 | uimsbf |
| if(stream_ID == 00){ | | |
| Reserved | 3 | uimsbf |
| PID | 13 | uimsbf |
| } | | |
| if(stream_ID == 01){ | | |
| program_number | 16 | uimsbf |
| } | | |
| } | | |
| } | | |

host_download_control_tag Value = 0x9F9C05

host_command Defines the priority of download.

- 00 Check for download during next cycle using source_id
- 01 Download now
- 02 Deferred download
- 03 Download now, no exceptions
- 04-FF Reserved

location_type Defines the method in which the Host device is to utilize to acquire the DSM-CC stream.

00 Transport Stream location is defined in the channel map and may be found via the defined source ID

01 Indicates that the Host device is to use the frequency, modulation type and PID or program number to acquire the DSM-CC stream. 02 - FF Reserved

source_id The VCT source ID that is associated with each program source. The source ID is utilized to locate the frequency that the DSC-CC data carousel is multiplexed on. A value of zero indicates that the download is located via the previously assigned source ID.

frequency_vector Frequency of the download carousel. The frequency is coded as the number of 0.25 MHz intervals. If download_type parameter equals 02, this parameter must be set to 0.

| transport_value | Value Type |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| 00 | DOCSIS channel |
| 01 | FAT channel/QAM-64 |
| 02 | FAT channel/QAM-256 |
| 03-FF | Reserved |

stream_IDDefines the way in which the DSM-CC is to be located.00Indicates that the DSM-CC stream is to be located utilizing the definedPID.0101Indicates that the stream is to be located utilizing the program number.02 - FFReserved

PID Packet identifier of the stream that contains the code file.

program_number Defines the program number in which the DSM-CC stream resides

APPENDIX A. Operational Modes (Informative)

A.1. Data Path Options

The Low Speed Communication resource allows the Host to share with the POD the different supported communication channels. This appendix describes data path options for various configurations.

Compliant Hosts must implement a "POD RX" channel (QPSK downstream modem), through which the POD Module expects to receive its messages. The following table describes standardized data paths with and without the availability of a "Host RX" channel.

| Table A.1-A Table Downstream Data Paths | |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| Host RX implemented (e.g. DOCSIS) | Standardized Downstream Data Paths |
| No | • POD RX \rightarrow Extended Channel \rightarrow Host |
| | • POD RX |
| Yes | Host RX |
| | • POD RX |
| | • Host RX \rightarrow Extended Channel \rightarrow POD |

When a "POD TX" channel is implemented, the POD Module expects to send its messages through its OOB channel. Other combinations are described in the following table.

| Table A.1-B Upstream Data Paths | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| POD TX implemented (e.g. QPSK upstream modem) | Host TX implemented (e.g. DOCSIS) | Standardized Upstream Data Paths |
| No | No | None |
| No | Yes | Host TX POD → Extended Channel → Host TX |
| Yes | No | Host → Extended Channel → POD TX POD TX |
| Yes | Yes | Host TXPOD TX |

A.2. OOB TX Channel Available

When the Host includes POD TX support, it includes the RF circuitry that enables the POD Module to control the out-of-band. The POD Module demultiplexes from the OOB stream the Host's application messages and the POD Module's application messages and transmit the Host's application messages through the Extended Channel, and keeps its own application messages for its own use. On the return path, the POD Module multiplexes the Host's application messages with its own messaging and transmits them to the Cable System.

Figure A.2-1 shows the example case where the POD has offered a bi-directional IP packet flow across the interface. The Extended channel also supports MPEG sections uni-directionally from POD to Host.



Figure A.2-1 OOB TX Channel Available

A.3. High Speed Modem Available

When the Host includes a High Speed Host Modem (e.g. DOCSIS), the POD Module still receives MPEG tables from the OOB channel, but relies on the HSHM for sending and receiving IP messages. The module OOB TX function may or may not be available.

A.3.1. OOB TX Channel Available

Figure A.3-1 shows the case that the OOB TX function is available. In this case, the POD Module uses it for upstream communications. Now, the POD has requested an IP flow from the Host, which must make its High Speed modem available for its use. It now has two possible paths for upstream data, the HSHM and the QPSK



Figure A.3-1 High Speed Host Modem and OOB TX Channel Available

A.3.2. OOB TX Channel Not Available

Figure A.3-2 shows the case that the OOB TX function is not available. In this case, the POD Module uses the HSHM for upstream communications.



Figure A.3-2 High Speed Host Modem Available, OOB TX Channel Not Available



Figure A.3-3 High Speed Host Modem Available, OOB TX Channel Not Available

| APPENDIX B. Glossary | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Term | Definition |
| A1 | Address Line 1 |
| ANSI | American National Standards Institute |
| APDU (Application Protocol Data Unit) | A common structure to send application data between POD module and Host. |
| API (Application Program Interface) | The software interface to system services or software libraries. An API can consist of classes, function calls, subroutine calls, descriptive tags, etc. |
| ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange) | Internationally recognized method for the binary representation of text |
| ATSC | Advanced Television System Committee. |
| AUT | AUT is a field in the status register that is set to 1 when the program event has been authorized. |
| BVD1 | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| BVD2 | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| СА | Conditional Access |
| CAN | CAN is a field in the status register that is set to 1 when the program event has been cancelled. |
| CD1# | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| CD2# | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| CE#2 | Card Enable |
| CE1# | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| СЕА | Consumer Electronics Alliance |
| CIS (Card Information Structure) | Low-level configuration information contained in the POD module's Attribute Memory. |
| CMOS | Complementary Metal Oxide Silicon |
| Cnf | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| Conditional Access and encryption | Conditional access and encryption is a system that provides selective access to programming to individual customers. |
| CPU Interface | The logical interface between the POD module and the Host comprised of the Data and Extended communications channels. |

| APPENDIX B. Glossary | |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Term | Definition |
| CRC | Cyclic Redundancy Check. |
| CRX | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| СТХ | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| D1 | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| D3 | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| DA | Data Available |
| DAIE | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) | An Internet standard for assigning IP addresses dynamically to IP hosts. |
| DOCSIS | Data-Over-Cable Service Interface Specification |
| Downstream | Transmission from head-end to Host. |
| DRX | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| DSM-CC | Digital Storage Medium – Command and Control. |
| DSM-CC-UU | Digital Storage Medium – Command and Control – User to User. |
| DVB | Digital Video Broadcast. |
| DVS | Digital Video Subcommittee |
| EAS | Emergency Alert System |
| EIA | Electronic Industries Alliance |
| EIT (Event Information Table) | An MPEG 2 table contained within the Program and System Information Protocol ("PSIP") which provides information for events on the virtual channels. |
| EMM (Entitlement Management Message) | A conditional access control message to a Host. |
| ETT (Extended Text Table) | An MPEG 2 table contained in the Program and System Information Protocol ("PSIP") which provides detailed descriptions of virtual channels and events. |
| ETX | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| FAT (Forward Applications Transport) Channel | A data channel carried from the headend to the set-top terminal in a modulated channel at a rate of 27 or 36 Mbps. MPEG-2 transport is used to multiplex video, audio, and data into the FAT channel. |

| APPENDIX B. Glossary | |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Term | Definition |
| FDC (Forward Data Channel) | An out-of-band ("OOB") data channel from the headend to the Host. |
| Forward | See Downstream |
| FRE | FRE is a field in the status register that is set to 1 when the free preview of the program event has been viewed. |
| FRIE | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| Gapped clock | A periodic signal in which some transitions are omitted creating gaps in a clock pattern. |
| GND | Ground |
| Н | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| нс | Header Check |
| Headend | The point at which all signals are collected and formatted for placement on the cable system. |
| Host | The consumer device used to access and navigate cable content. Typically a digital TV or set-top DTV receiver, |
| HTML (HyperText Markup Language) | A presentation language for the display of multiple media contents, typically used on the Internet. |
| HTTP (HyperText Transport Protocol) | The transport layer for HTML documents over the Internet Protocol ("IP"). |
| I/O | Input or output |
| ID | Identifier |
| IIR (Initialize Interface Request) | Data bit in Status register |
| INPACK# | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| In-band | Within the main Forward Applications Transport channel |
| IOIS6# | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| IORD# | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| IOWR# | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| IP (Internet Protocol) | Network layer protocol in the TCP/IP stack offering a connectionless internetwork service. |
| IP_U (IP Unicast) | Point-to-Point Internet Protocol datagram service |

| APPENDIX B. Glossary | |
|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Term | Definition |
| IP_M(IP Multicast) | Point to multi-point Internet Protocol datagram service |
| IPG | Interactive Program Guide |
| IPPV | Impulse Pay-per-View |
| IREQ# | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| ITX | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| KHz | Kilo Hertz |
| Low Speed Communications Resource | Communications protocol defined in CEA-679-C Part B |
| LSB | Least Significant Bit or Byte |
| M/L | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| МА | Milli-Amps |
| MAC | Media Access Control |
| Master Guide Table | An MPEG 2 table which provides version, size and PIDs of other tables contained within the transport stream. |
| MCLKO | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| MCLKI | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| MDO1 | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| MISTRT | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| MIVAL | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| MMI | Man Machine Interface |
| MOSTRT | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| MOVAL | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| MPEG (Moving Picture Experts Group) | Colloquial name for ISO-IEC SC29/WG11, which develops standards for compressed full-motion video, still image, audio, and other associated information. |
| MPEG-2 Video | ISO-IEC 13818-2, international standard for the compression of video. |
| MPEG-2 Transport | ISO-IEC 13818-1, international standard for the transport of compressed digital media. |

| APPENDIX B. Glossary | |
|-------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Term | Definition |
| Ms | Milli-second |
| MSB | Most Significant Bit or Byte |
| Ns | Nano-second |
| NTSC (National Television Systems Committee) | An entity that developed the analog television system used in North America and elsewhere. |
| OE# | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-CPart B. |
| OOB (Out-of-Band) Channel | The combination of the Forward and Reverse Data Channels. The OOB channel provides a data communication channel between the cable system and the Host. |
| OPU | OPU is a field in the status register that is set to 1 when the program event has been purchased for taping once. |
| PC Card | A device that complies with the PC Card Standard, as specified in Section 2.3.1 of this document. |
| PCMCIA | Personal Computer Memory Card International Association |
| PDU (Protocol Data Unit) | A packet of data passed across a network or interface |
| PF | Pico-farad |
| РНҮ | Physical Layer |
| PID | Packet Identifier. |
| PIN | Personal Identification Number |
| PNG | Portable Network Graphics. |
| POD | Point-of-Deployment; The Point-of-Deployment module is also known as a CableCARD [™] device. |
| PPV | Pay-Per-View. |
| PSI | Program Specific Information. |
| QAM (Quadrature Amplitude Modulation) | A digital modulation method in which the value of a symbol consisting of multiple bits is represented by amplitude and phase states of a carrier. Typical types of QAM include 16-QAM (four bits per symbol), 32-QAM (five bits), 64-QAM (six bits), and 256-QAM (eight bits). |
| QPSK (Quadrature Phase Shift Key) | A digital modulation method in which the state of a two-bit symbol is represented by one of four possible phase states. |
| QTX | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |

| APPENDIX B. Glossary | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Term | Definition |
| R | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| RDC (Reverse Data Channel) | An out-of-band ("OOB") data channel from the host to the headend. |
| REG# | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| REP | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| RESET | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| Resource | A unit of functionality provided by the host for use by a module. A resource defines a set of objects exchanged between module and host by which the module uses the resource. |
| Reverse | See Upstream |
| RF | Radio Frequency |
| RFC | Request For Comments |
| RPC (Remote Procedure Call) | The ability for client software to invoke a function or procedure call on a remote server machine. |
| RX | Receive |
| SCTE | Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers |
| Smart Card | A ISO 7816-compliant card with embedded electronics used to store or process data |
| SPKR# | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| STSCHG# | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| STCI_IFN | The interface ID number defined by PCMCIA to be included in the Custom Interface Subtuple. |
| Subtuple | Subset of a Tuple |
| System Time Table | An MPEG 2 table which provides date and time. |
| Td | Time interval for delay |
| Th | Time interval for holding |
| Tsu | Time interval for setup |
| Tuple | Data stored within a PC Card that can be used to determine the capabilities of the card |
| ТХ | Transmit |

| APPENDIX B. Glossary | |
|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Term | Definition |
| UDP (User Datagram Protocol) | Connectionless Transport layer protocol in the TCP/IP stack. |
| Uimsbf | Unsigned Integer Most Significant Bit First |
| UPU | UPU is a field in the status register that is set to 1 when the program event has been purchased for unlimited taping. |
| Upstream | Transmission from host to head-end |
| URL (Uniform Resource Locator) | A standard method of specifying the location of an object or file. |
| V | Volt |
| VCC | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| VIE | VIE is a field in the status register that is set to 1 when the program event has been viewed. |
| VCT (Virtual Channel Table) | An MPEG 2 table which contains a list of all the channels that are or will be on plus their attributes. |
| VOD | Video on Demand. |
| VPP-1 | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| VPP-2 | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| VPU | VPU is a field in the status register that is set to 1 when the program event has been purchased for viewing once. |
| VS1 | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| WAIT# | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |
| WE# | Chip pin acronym defined in CEA-679-C Part B. |

APPENDIX C. Baseline HTML Profile Requirements

This appendix describes HTML keywords that shall be supported by the Baseline HTML Profile and gives for each keyword the requirements foreseen on the Host.

The Baseline HTML Profile only supports formatted text messages, in the form of HTML pages with one hyperlink.

The **Application Information** resource may identify Hosts that support more elaborate HTML pages with multiple hyperlinks and multiple levels of text rendering and graphic support. In such a case the POD can supply HTML pages that take advantage of these enhanced features.

This extended mode of operation is not described in Appendix C.

C.1. Format

C.1.1. Display

Baseline HTML Profile pages shall be designed to fit in a 4/3 and 16/9 NTSC display size using the smallest common screen (640 x 480) without vertical and horizontal scrolling.

MMI messages from the POD shall be limited to a maximum of 16 lines of 32 characters each. If the MMI message is longer than 16 lines, the message may include up to 16 lines of text including a hyperlink pointing to an additional page.

Under the Baseline HTML Profile the Uni-Directional Receiving Device shall support minimum of 32 characters per line and a minimum of 16 lines of characters in a window without vertical and horizontal scrolling. The vertical height of the characters shall be approximately 1/18 of the screen height.

The Host shall display all text of every page visibly on the screen. The Host device may use screen space around the MMI message for navigation buttons such as "Press MENU to Exit" and/or status information. Host-added navigation buttons and status information, if added, shall not obscure any MMI text.

If the HTML from the POD contains a hyperlink, the Host manufacturer shall provide instructions on how to navigate to any links contained in the POD's HTML message. Instructions may be provided by on-screen display or by instructions in the owner's manual.

The Baseline HTML Profile requires that MMI windows shall be opaque.
C.1.2. Font

The Baseline HTML Profile font shall support a minimum of 32 characters per line, and a minimum of 16 lines of characters.

C.1.3. Text and Background Colors

Under the Baseline HTML Profile, the Host may render text color as requested in the HTML data from the POD.

Under the Baseline HTML Profile, the Host may render the background color as requested in the HTML data from the POD.

If the HTML data does not include a background and/or text color command, or the Host does not support the background and/or color command, the Host shall use either

- 1) black (#000000) text on a light gray (#C0C0C0) background or
- 2) white (#FFFFF) text on a black (#000000) background.

If the Host device supports either the background color or text color command then it shall support both of the commands. It should not support only one of the commands. (Footnote: Supporting only one of the commands could lead to unreadable messages, for example if the POD requests gray text on a white background and the Host supports the text color command but uses the default background color, the result would be gray text on a gray background).

C.1.4. Unvisited Link Color

Under the Baseline HTML Profile, the Host may render the unvisited link color as requested in the HTML data from the POD. If the HTML data does not include an unvisited link color command, or the Host does not support the unvisited link color command, the Host shall use blue (#0000FF).

C.1.5. Paragraph

Under the Baseline HTML Profile, the Host may align paragraphs as requested by the HTML data from the POD. If the HTML data does not include a paragraph alignment command, or the Host does not support the paragraph alignment command, the Host shall use a LEFT paragraph alignment.

C.1.6. Image

The Baseline HTML Profile does not require support for images.

C.1.7. Table

The Baseline HTML Profile does not require support for tables.

C.1.8. Forms

The Baseline HTML Profile does not require support for forms.

C.2. Supported User Interactions

C.2.1. Navigation and Links

The Baseline HTML Profile does not define how a hyperlink is navigated and selected. It is up to the Host manufacturer to provide some navigation/selection mechanism to identify the user intention and forward the selected link to the POD module using the server_query object. It is up to the POD module manufacturer to determine how results are returned to the POD module through the URL of the server_query object. The Host shall provide a method of user navigation to the hyperlink in the MMI message if one is present.

C.3. HTML Keywords

The following table lists HTML keywords used in the Baseline HTML Profile (R=required or O=Optional).

A keyword or a parameter marked as optional may be inserted in an HTML page, but may not be used by the Host. It shall not change what is displayed on the screen but only the way of displaying it (basically it applies to the style).

| Table C.3-A Keyword List | | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|--|--|
| STRUCTURE | | | |
| <html></html> | R | | |
| Begin and end HTML document | | | |
| <body> </body> | R | | |
| Begin and end of the body of the document, optional attributes of the document: | | | |
| • bgcolor: background color, default: light gray (#C0C0C0) | | | |
| • text: color of text, default: black (#000000) | 0 | | |
| • link: color of unvisited links, default: blue (#0000FF) | 0 | | |
| | 0 | | |
| | R | | |
| Begin and end an anchor | | | |
| • href: URL targeted by this anchor | R | | |
| Style Element | | | |
| <p></p> | R | | |
| Change of paragraph | 0 | | |
| • align: CENTER, LEFT or RIGHT (default : LEFT) | | | |
| | R | | |
| Force new line | | | |
| <i></i> | | | |
| Character style: bold, italic and underlined | | | |

C.4. Characters

An HTML page can refer to all characters by their numeric value by enclosing them between the & and ; symbols. For example, the quotation mark " can be expressed as " in an HTML page. The characters also have mnemonic names as well. Thus, the following 3 expressions are interpreted as a character ":

" "

Note: Mnemonic expressions are case sensitive.

Table C.5-A defines characters, their numeric and mnemonic expressions that Baseline HTML viewer shall support. Any baseline HTML page shall not use the characters, numeric or mnemonic expressions which are not defined in the table C.5-A. The host device may ignore the characters which are not defined in the table C.5-A.

This list is taken from the HTML 4 Character entity references found at:

| http://www.w3.org/ | TR/1999/REC-html401-1999 | 1224/sgml/entities html |
|--------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| incep.// // // // | | |

| Table C.4-A (| Characters | _ | |
|---------------|-------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| Character | Name | Numeric Expression | Mnemonic Expression |
| | Horizontal tab | | |
| | Line feed | & #10; | |
| | | | |
| | Space | | |
| ! | Exclamation mark | ! | |
| | Quotation mark | " | " |
| # | Number sign | # | |
| \$ | Dollar sign | \$ | |
| % | Percent sign | % | |
| & | Ampersand | & | & |
| | Apostrophe | ' | |
| (| Left parenthesis | (| |
|) | Right parenthesis |) | |
| * | Asterisk | * | |
| + | Plus sign | + | |
| , | Comma | , | |
| - | Hyphen | - | |
| | Period | . | |
| / | Solidus (slash) | / | |
| 0 | | & #48; | |
| 1 | | 1 | |
| 2 | | 2 | |
| 3 | | 3 | |
| 4 | | 4 | |
| 5 | | 5 | |
| 6 | | 6 | |
| 7 | | 7 | |
| 8 | | 8 | |
| 9 | | 9 | |
| : | Colon | & #58; | |
| ; | Semicolon | ; | |
| < | Less than | < | < |
| = | Equals sign | = | |
| > | Greater than | > | > |
| ? | Question mark | ? | |
| @ | Commercial at | @ | |
| А | | A | |
| В | | B | |
| С | | & #67; | |

| Table C.4-A G | Characters | | |
|---------------|----------------------|---------|--|
| D | | D | |
| E | | E | |
| F | | F | |
| G | | G | |
| Н | | H | |
| Ι | | I | |
| J | | J | |
| K | | K | |
| L | | L | |
| М | | M | |
| N | | N | |
| 0 | | O | |
| P | | P | |
| Q | | Q | |
| R | | R | |
| S T | | S T | |
| U U | | T, U | |
| V | | U V | |
| W | | P W | |
| X | | X | |
| Y | | Y | |
| Ζ | | Z | |
| [| Left square bracket | [| |
| Ň | Reverse solidus | \ | |
|] | Right square bracket |] | |
| ^ | Circumflex | ^ | |
| - | Horizontal bar | _ | |
| Ì | Grave accent | ` | |
| a | | a | |
| b | | b | |
| C 1 | | c | |
| d | | d | |
| e f | | e f | |
| | | f g | |
| g h | | g, h | |
| I | | h i | |
| j | | i j | |
| k | | k | |
| 1 | | l | |
| m | | m | |
| n | | n | |
| 0 | | o | |
| р | | p | |
| q | | q | |
| r | | r | |
| S | | s | |
| t | | t | |
| u | | u | |
| V | | v | |
| W | | w x | |
| X | | x | |
| У | | y | |

| Table C | 2.4-A Characters | | |
|------------------|------------------------|--------------------|---|
| Z | | z | |
| { | Left curly brace | { | |
| Ì | Vertical bar | | |
| } | Right curly brace | } | |
| ~ | Tilde | ~ | |
| | Non-breaking space | | |
| i | Inverted exclamation | ¡ | ¡ |
| ¢ | Cent | ¢ | ¢ |
| £ | Pound | £ | £ |
| a | Currency | ¤ | ¤ |
| ¥ | Yen | ¥ | ¥ |
| 1 | Broken vertical | ¦ | ¦ |
| § | Section sign | § | § |
| | Umlaut/diaeresis | ¨ | ¨ |
| © | Copyright | © | © |
| a | Feminine | & #170; | ª |
| « | Left angle quote | « | « |
| - | No sign | ¬ | ¬ |
| - | Hyphen | ­ | ­ |
| R | Reg. trade mark | ® | ® |
| _ | Macron | ¯ | ¯ |
| 0 | Degrees | ° | ° |
| ± | Plus/Minus | & #177; | ± |
| 2 | Superscript 2 | & #178; | ² |
| 3 | Superscript 3 | ³ | ³ |
| , | Acute accent | & #180; | ´ |
| μ | Micron | µ | µ |
| ſ | Paragraph sign | ¶ | ¶ |
| • | Middle dot | · | · |
| و | Cedilla | ¸ | ¸ |
| 1 | Superscript 1 | ¹ | ¹ |
| 0 | Masculine | º | º |
| »» | Right angle quote | » | » |
| 1/4 | One quarter | ¼ | ¼ |
| 1/2 | One half | ½ | ½ |
| 3/4 | Three quarters | ¾ | ¾ |
| ί À | Inverted question mark | ¿ | ¿ |
| | A Grave | À | À |
| Á | A Acute | Á | Á |
| Â Ã | A Circumflex | Â | Â |
| A Ä | A Tilde | Ã | Ã |
| | A Diaeresis | Ä | Ä |
| Å | A Ring | Å | Å |
| Æ | AE Diphthong | Æ | Æ |
| Ç | C Cedilla | Ç | Ç |
| Ç È É Ê | E Grave | È | È |
| c ĉ | E Acute | É | É |
| e Ë | E Circumflex | Ê | Ê |
| e Ì | E Diaeresis | Ë | Ë |
| l Í | I Grave | Ì | Ì |
| | I Acute | Í | Í |
| Î Ï | I Circumflex | Î | Î |
| | I Diaeresis | Ï | Ï |
| Ð | Icelandic eth | Ð | Ð |

| ί | N Tilde | Ñ | Ñ |
|--------|------------------|---------|-------------|
|) | O Grave | Ò | Ò |
|) | O Acute | Ó | Ó |
|) | O Circumflex | Ô | Ô |
|) | O Tilde | Õ | Õ |
|) | O Diaeresis | Ö | Ö |
| | Multiplication | × | × |
|) | O Slash | Ø | Ø |
| [| U Grave | Ù | Ù |
| ſ | U Acute | Ú | Ú |
| ſ | U Circumflex | Û | Û |
| Г | U Diaeresis | Ü | Ü |
| - - | Y Acute | Ü Ý | Ý |
| | Icelandic Thorn | Þ | Þ |
| | Small sharp S | ß | ß |
| | a Grave | ß à | à |
| | a Acute | á | á |
| | a Circumflex | â | â |
| | a Tilde | Ü ã | ã |
| | a Diaeresis | ã ä | ä |
| | a Ring | ä å | å |
| ; | ae Diphthong | å æ | æ |
| / | c Cedilla | æ, ç | ç |
| | e Grave | ç è | è |
| | e Acute | è é | é |
| | e Circumflex | é ê | ê |
| | e Diaeresis | ê ë | ë |
| | i Grave | ë ì | ì |
| | i Acute | æ, í | í |
| | i Circumflex | í î | î |
| | i Diaeresis | î ï | ï |
| | Icenlandic eth | ï ð | ð |
| | n Tilde | ð ñ | ñ |
| | o Grave | ñ ò | ò |
| | o Acute | ò ó | ó |
| | o Circumflex | ó ô | ô |
| | o Tilde | õ | õ |
| | o Diaeresis | õ ö | ö |
| | Division | ð ÷ | ÷ |
| | o Slash | ÷ ø | ø |
| | u Grave | ø ù | ù |
| | u Acute | ù ú | ù, ú |
| | u Circumflex | ú û | ú, û |
| | u Diaeresis | û ü | ü |
| | y Acute | ü ý | ý |
| | Icenlandic thorn | ÿ þ | ý, þ |
| | y Diaeresis | þ ÿ | &unorn ÿ |

APPENDIX D. POD Module Attribute and Configuration Registers

D.1. General

This appendix was originally documented in SCTE –DVS/222 and has been included in this document.

This appendix is a detailed map of the attribute registers and configuration option register of the SCTE Point of Deployment (POD) module. It is assumed that the reader is familiar with the PC Card tuple arrangement for the attribute registers.

D.2. Attribute Tuples

The following is a list of the attribute tuples which must be implemented in the POD module.

CISTPL_LINKTARGET CISTPL_DEVICE_OA CISTPL_DEVICE_OC CISTPL_VERS_1 CISTPL_MANFID CISTPL_CONFIG CCST_CIF CISTPL_CFTABLE_ENTRY STCE_EV STCE_PD CISTPL_NO_LINK CISTPL_END

D.2.1. CISTPL_LINKTARGET

Defined in section 3.1.4 of PC Card Metaformat [10], this is recommended by the PC Card standard for low voltage PC Cards for robustness. This would be in addition to the tuples defined in [1] and would be the first tuple.

| Table D.2-A CISTPL_LINKTARGET | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------|----------|------------|-------------|--------|----------|---|---|---|
| Byte | Address (hex) | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| 0 | 00 | TPL_CO | DE = CIS | TPL_LIN | KTARGE | Г (0x13) | | | |
| 1 | 02 | TPL_LI | VK = 0x03 | 3 | | | | | |
| 2 | 04 | TPL_TA | G (3 bytes | s) = 0x43 (| (C) | | | | |
| 3 | 06 | 0x49 (I) | | | | | | | |
| 4 | 08 | 0x53 (S) | | | | | | | |

D.2.2. CISTPL_DEVICE_0A

Defined in section 3.2.3 of PC Card Metaformat [10], this tuple is used to define the attribute memory operation.

| Table D.2 | Table D.2-B CISTPL_DEVICE_0A | | | | | | | | |
|-----------|------------------------------|----------|--------------------------------------|------------|----|---|---|---|---|
| Byte | Address (hex) | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| 0 | 00 | TPL_CO | $TPL_CODE = CISTPL_DEVICE_0A (0x1D)$ | | | | | | |
| 1 | 02 | TPL_LI | $TPL_LINK = 0x04$ | | | | | | |
| 2 | 04 | Other_C | onditions_ | Info = 0x(|)2 | | | | |
| 3 | 06 | Device_l | $D_1 = 0x$ | 08 | | | | | |
| 4 | 08 | Device_S | Size = $0x0$ | 0 | | | | | |
| 5 | 0A | 0xFF | | | | | | | |

D.2.3. CISTPL_DEVICE_0C

Defined in section 3.2.3 of PC Card Metaformat [10], this tuple is used to define the common memory operation.

| Table D.2 | Table D.2-C CISTPL_DEVICE_0C | | | | | | | | |
|-----------|------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|------------|----------|-------|---|---|---|
| Byte | Address (hex0 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| 0 | 00 | TPL_CO | DE = CIS | TPL_DEV | /ICE_0C(| 0x1C) | | | |
| 1 | 02 | TPL_LIN | K = 0x04 | Ļ | | | | | |
| 2 | 04 | Other_C | onditions_ | Info = 0x0 |)2 | | | | |
| 3 | 06 | Device_l | Device ID $1 = 0x08$ | | | | | | |
| 4 | 08 | Device_Size = 0x00 | | | | | | | |
| 5 | 0A | TPL_EN | D = 0xFF | | | | | | |

D.2.4. CISTPL_VERS_1

Defined in section 3.2.10 of PC Card Metaformat [10]. Section A.5.6 of [1] requires that TPLLV1_MAJOR be 0x05 and that TPLLV1_MINOR = 0x00. The field name of the product shall be "OPENCABLE POD Module".

| Table D | .2-D CISTPL_V | /ERS_1 |
|---------|---------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| Byte | Address (hex) | 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0 |
| 0 | 00 | $TPL_CODE = CISTPL_VERS_1 (0x15)$ |
| 1 | 02 | $TPL_LINK = 26+n+m$ |
| 2 | 04 | $TPLLV1_MAJOR = 0x05$ |
| 3 | 06 | $TPLLV1_MINOR = 0x00$ |
| 4 | 08 | TPPLV1_INFO = {Name of manufacturer (n bytes) |
| 4+n | 08+(2*n) | TPLLV1_INFO (multiple bytes) ox00 (Null) |
| 5+n | 0A+(2*n) | 0x4F (O) |
| 6+n | 0C+(2*n) | 0x50 (P) |
| 7+n | 0E+(2*n) | 0x45 (E) |
| 8+n | 10+(2*n) | 0x4E (N) |
| 9+n | 12+(2*n) | 0x43 (C) |
| 10+n | 14+(2*n) | 0x41 (A) |
| 11+n | 16+(2*n) | 0x42 (B) |
| 12+n | 18+(2*n) | 0x4C (L) |
| 13+n | 1A+(2*n) | 0x45 (E) |
| 14+n | 1C+(2*n) | 0x20() |
| 15+n | 1E+(2*n) | 0x50 (P) |
| 16+n | 20+(2*n) | 0x4F (O) |
| 17+n | 22+(2*n) | 0x44 (D) |
| 18+n | 24+(2*n) | 0x20() |
| 19+n | 26+(2*n) | 0x4D (M) |
| 20+n | 28+(2*n) | 0x6F (o) |
| 21+n | 2A+(2*n) | 0x64 (d) |
| 22+n | 2C+(2*n) | 0x75 (u) |
| 23+n | 2E+(2*n) | 0x6C (1) |
| 24+n | 30+(2*n) | 0x65 (e) |
| 25+n | 32+(2*n) | 0x00 (Null) |
| 26+n | 34+(2*n) | Additional Product Information (m bytes) |
| 27+n | 36+(2*n) | 0x00 (Null)} |
| 27+n+ | 36+(2*n)+m | $TPL_END = 0xFF$ |
| m | | |

D.2.5. CISTPL_CONFIG

Defined in section 3.3.4 of PC Card Metaformat [10] with requirements in [1].

| Table D.2 | 2-E CISTPL_C | ONFIG | | | | | | | |
|-----------|---------------|----------|------------|--------|---------|--------|------|------|-------|
| Byte | Address (hex) | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| 0 | 00 | TPL_CO | DDE = CI | STPL_C | ONFIG (| Dx1A) | | | |
| 1 | 02 | TPL_LI | NK = 5 + r | n+m+p | | | | | |
| 2 | 04 | (|) | | TPCC | RMSZ | | TPCC | C_RAS |
| | | | | | _ | _ | | | Z |
| 3 | 06 | (|) | | | TPCC_I | LAST | | |
| 4 | 08 | n bytes | of TPCC_ | RADR | | | | | |
| 5+n | 0A+(2*n) | m bytes | of TPCC | RMSK | | | | | |
| 6+n+m | 0C+(2* | 19 bytes | of TPCC | SBTPL | | | | | |
| | (n+m)) | - | | | | | | | |
| 25+n+ | 32+(2* | TPL_EN | VD = 0xF | F | | | | | |
| m | (n+m+p)) | | | | | | | | |

| TPCC_RMSZ | The number of bytes in the configuration registers Base Address in Attribute Memory Space field (TPCC RMSK) of this tuple is the value of this field plus 1. For the POD |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | module, this value will depend on the manufacturer. |
| TPCC_RASZ | The number of bytes in the Configuration Register presence mask field |
| | (TPCC_RADR field) of the tuple is this value plus 1. For the POD module, this value will depend on the manufacturer. |
| TPCC_LAST | One byte field which contains the Configuration Index Number of the last configuration described in the Card Configuration Table. Once the Host encounters this configuration, when scanning for valid configurations, it shall have processed all valid configurations. For the POD module, this value will depend on the manufacturer. |
| TPCC_RADR | The Base Address of the Configuration Registers, in an even byte of Attribute Memory (address of Configuration Register 0), is given in this field. |
| TPCC_RMSK | The presence mask for the Configuration Registers is given in this field. Each bit represents the presence (1) or absence (0) of the corresponding Configuration Register. |
| TPCC_SBTPL | The sub-tuple allows for additional configuration sub-tuples. The CCST_CIF sub- tuple must be implemented. |

D.2.6. CCST_CIF

Defined in section 3.3.4.5.1 of PC Card Metaformat [10]. The interface ID number (STCI_IFN) is 0x41. STCI_STR is defined to be 'POD_V1.00'.

| Table D.2 | 2-F CCST_CIF | 1 | | | | | | | |
|-----------|----------------------|----------|------------|-----------|------------|----|---|---|---|
| Byte | Address _H | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| 0 | 00 | ST_CO | DE = CCS | ST_CIF (| (0xC0) | | | | |
| 1 | 02 | ST_LIN | K = 0x0E | 3 | | | | | |
| 2 | 04 | STCI_II | FN = 0x4 | 1 | | | | | |
| 3 | 06 | STCI_II | $FN_1 = 0$ | x03 | | | | | |
| 4 | 08 | STCI_S | TR (mult | iple byte | s) 0x50 (P | ') | | | |
| 5 | 0A | 0x4F (C |) | | | | | | |
| 6 | 0C | 0x44 (D |) | | | | | | |
| 7 | 0E | 0x5F (|) | | | | | | |
| 8 | 10 | 0x56 (V |) | | | | | | |
| 9 | 12 | 0x31 (1) |) | | | | | | |
| 10 | 14 | 0x2E (.) | | | | | | | |
| 11 | 16 | 0x30 (0 |) | | | | | | |
| 12 | 18 | 0x30 (0 |) | | | | | | |
| 13 | 1A | 0x00 (N | ull) | | | | | | |
| 14 | 1C | TPL E | ND 0xFF | | | | | | |

D.2.7. CISTPL_CFTABLE_ENTRY

Defined in section 3.3.2 of PC Card Metaformat [10]. For the first entry TPCE_INDX has both bits 6 (Default) and 7 (Intface) set. The Configuration Entry Number is selected by the manufacturer. TPCE_IF = 0x04 – indicating Custom Interface 0. TPCE_FS shall indicate the presence of both I/O and power configuration entries. TPCE_IO is a 1-byte field with the value 0x22. The information means: 2 address lines are decoded by the module and it uses only 8-bit accesses. The power configuration entry – required by this specification, shall follow the PC Card Specification." Additionally, two sub-tuples, STCE_EV and STCE_PD shall be included.

The power descriptor for Vcc is modified to 1 A.

| Table D | .2-G CISTPL_0 | | | [| | | | | |
|---------|---------------|-------------------|---------------------|----------|------------------|----------|-----------|---------------------|---|
| Byte | Address (hex) | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| 0 | 00 | TPL_CO | DDE = C | ISTPL_ | CFTABLE | _ENTRY | (0x1B) | | |
| 1 | 02 | TPL_LI | NK == 0 |)x33 | | | | | |
| 2 | 04 | TPCE I | NDX = | 0xC0 LC | GICAL O | R Config | Entry N | Jumber _H | |
| 3 | 06 | TPCE I | | | | | 2 | | |
| 4 | 08 | TPCE I | | | | | | | |
| 5 | 0A | | | | r Selection | Bvte = 0 | x38 | | |
| 6 | 0C | | | | rrent = Ma | | | | |
| 7 | 0E | | | | Current = (| | | | |
| 8 | 10 | | | | rent = $0x0^{2}$ | | | | |
| 9 | 12 | TPCE I | D Vpp | Paramete | er Selection | Byte = 0 | x78 | | |
| 10 | 14 | | | | rrent = Ma | | | | |
| 11 | 16 | TPCE F | D Vpp | Average | Current = | 0x26 | | | |
| 12 | 18 | | <u> </u> | | rent = 0x2 | | | | |
| 13 | 10 1A | _ | 11 | | own Curre | | ifacturer | value | |
| 14 | 10 | _ | $\frac{D}{O} = 0x2$ | | | | | | |
| 15 | 1E | _ | | CE EV | (0xC0) | | | | |
| 16 | 20 | ST_UN | | | (0100) | | | | |
| 17 | 20 | _ | | | HOST" 0x | 4F (O) | | | |
| 18 | 24 | 0x50 (P | | | | II (0) | | | |
| 19 | 26 | 0x45 (E | | | | | | | |
| 20 | 28 | 0x4E (N | / | | | | | | |
| 20 | 28 2A | 0x43 (C | / | | | | | | |
| 22 | 2C | 0x13 (C | / | | | | | | |
| 23 | 2E | 0x42 (B | , | | | | | | |
| 24 | 30 | 0x4C (L | / | | | | | | |
| 25 | 32 | 0x45 (E | / | | | | | | |
| 26 | 34 | 0x15 (1) | , | | | | | | |
| 27 | 36 | 0x48 (H | • | | | | | | |
| 28 | 38 | 0x4F (O | , | | | | | | |
| 29 | 3A | 0x53 (S | / | | | | | | |
| 30 | 3C | 0x53 (5) | | | | | | | |
| 31 | 3E | 0x00 (N | / | | | | | | |
| 32 | 40 | 0xFF | uii) | | | | | | |
| 33 | 42 | | DE = ST | CE PD | (0xC1) | | | | |
| 34 | 44 | ST LIN | | | (JAC 1) | | | | |
| 35 | 46 | | | | CI MODU | LE" 0x44 | 5 (0) | | |
| 36 | 48 | 0x50 (P | | | 0 | | (~) | | |
| 37 | 4A | 0x45 (E | | | | | | | |
| 38 | 4C | 0x4E (N | / | | | | | | |
| 39 | 4E | 0x43 (C | / | | | | | | |
| 40 | 50 | 0x41 (A | / | | | | | | |
| 41 | 52 | 0x42 (B | / | | | | | | |
| 42 | 54 | 0x4C (L | / | | | | | | |
| 43 | 56 | 0x45 (E | / | | | | | | |
| 44 | 58 | 0x+5(L) 0x5F() | / | | | | | | |

| Table D.2 | Table D.2-G CISTPL_CFTABLE_ENTRY | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------|----------------------------------|---------|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|
| Byte | Address (hex) | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | | | |
| 45 | 5A | 0x4D (N | A) | | | | | | | | | |
| 46 | 5C | 0x4F (C |)) | | | | | | | | | |
| 47 | 5E | 0x44 (D |) | | | | | | | | | |
| 48 | 60 | 0x55 (U |) | | | | | | | | | |
| 49 | 62 | 0x4C (L | L) | | | | | | | | | |
| 50 | 64 | 0x45 (E |) | | | | | | | | | |
| 51 | 66 | 0x00 (N | (ull) | | | | | | | | | |
| 52 | 68 | 0xFF | | | | | | | | | | |
| 53 | 6A | 0xFF | | | | | | | | | | |

D.2.8. CISTPL_END

Defined in section 3.1.2 of PC Card Metaformat [10] .

| Table D.2 | Table D.2-H CISTPL_END | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------|------------------------------------|--------|-----------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Byte | Byte Address (hex) 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 00 | TPL_CO | TPL_CODE = CISTPL_END(0xFF) | | | | | | | | |

D.2.9. Configuration Option Register

Defined in section 4.15.1 of PC Card Electrical [9].

| Table D | Table D.2-I Configuration Option Register | | | | | | | | | |
|---------|-------------------------------------------|--------|------|---------|-----------|------------|------|---|---|--|
| Byte | Address | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | |
| | ,(hex) | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | 00 | SRESET | Levl | Functio | on Config | uration Ir | ıdex | | | |
| | | | REQ | | | | | | | |

D.2.9.1. Values to Enable POD Personality Change

SRESET – 0 (Do not soft reset (POD reset) the POD module)

LevIREQ – 1 (POD module generates Level Mode interrupts.

Function Configuration Index – Lower 6 bits of TPCE_INDX.

D.2.9.2. Operation After Invoking POD Personality Change

After the correct value is written into the configuration register, the POD module shall wait a minimum of 10 usec before switching from the PCMCIA to the POD interface.

APPENDIX E. POD Error Handling

E.1. Error Handling

When error handling requires action by both the Host and the POD module, the action by the first is designated with a "(1)". It is suggested that the POD module create a diagnostic user interface which registers with the application info resource to allow it to report any error conditions, especially in a broadcast (one-way) scenario.

| | Error condition | Failure mechanism | Host action | SCTE POD module action | Comments |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | POD READY signal does not go active. | | Host either 1) reports error using screen in figure (figure E.1-1), 2) retry PCMCIA resets up to two times and then report error using screen in figure (figure E-1), or 3) report error but continue to perform PCMCIA resets | None | Host reports error to user. |
| 2 | Host reads incorrect CIS values | | Host reports error using screen in figure E.1-1 Error Display | None | Host reports error to user. ¹ |
| 3 | Host writes incorrect TPCE_INDX value to POD configuration register | Host | None | POD cannot perform any action. | Host detects as failure #4 and reports error to user. ¹ |

| Га | ble E.1-A Error Handling | | | | |
|----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| | Error condition | Failure mechanism | Host action | SCTE POD module action | Comments |
| 4 | Host sets data channel RS bit but POD fails to set FR bit within 5 second timeout. | POD | Host either 1) reports error using screen in figure Figure E.1-1 Error Display 2) retry PCMCIA resets up to two times and then report error using screen in figure Figure E.1-1 Error Display, or 3) reports error and continue to perform PCMCIA resets | None | Host reports error to user. ¹ |
| 5 | Host sets extended channel RS bit but POD fails to set FR bit within 5 second timeout. | POD | Host either 1) reports error using screen in figure Figure E.1-1 Error Display 2) retry PCMCIA resets up to two times and then report error using screen in figure Figure E.1-1 Error Display, or 3) reports error and continue to perform PCMCIA resets | None | Host reports error to user. ¹ |

| | Error condition | Failure mechanism | Host action | SCTE POD module action | Comments |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| 6 | Invalid buffer negotiation - POD data channel (buffer size < 16) | POD | Host either 1) reports error using screen in figure Figure E.1-1 Error Display 2) retry PCMCIA resets up to two times and then report error using screen in figure Figure E.1-1 Error Display, or 3) operate with smaller size | None | Host reports error to user. ¹ |
| 7 | Invalid buffer negotiation - Host data channel (buffer size < 16 or greater than POD data channel buffer size) | Host | None | Minimum – POD sets IIR flag and stops responding to polls. Preferred – POD works with Host buffer size | Host reports error to user. ¹ |
| 8 | Invalid buffer negotiation – POD extended channel (buffer size < 16) | POD | Host either 1) reports error using screen in figure Figure E.1-1 Error Display 2) retry PCMCIA resets up to two times and then report error using screen in figure Figure E.1-1 Error Display, or 3) operate with smaller size | None | Host reports error to user. ¹ |
| 9 | Invalid buffer negotiation - Host extended channel (buffer size < 16 or greater than POD data channel buffer size) | Host | None | Minimum – POD sets IIR flag and stops responding to polls. Preferred – POD works with Host buffer size | Host reports error to user. ¹ |

| | Error condition | Failure mechanism | Host action | SCTE POD module action | Comments | |
|----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|--|
| 10 | POD does not respond to Hosts open transport request within 5 seconds. | POD | Host either 1) reports error using screen in figure Figure E.1-1 Error Display 2) retry PCMCIA resets up to two times and then report error using screen in figure Figure E.1-1 Error Display, or 3) reports error and continue to perform PCMCIA resets | None | Host reports error to user. ¹ | |
| 11 | Host does not respond to POD request to open resource manager session within 5 seconds. | Host | None | Minimum – POD sets IIR flag and stops responding to polls. | Host reports error to user. ¹ | |
| 12 | Host response to open resource manager session response - resource manager non-existent | Host | None | Minimum – POD sets IIR flag and stops responding to polls. | Host reports error to user. ¹ | |
| 13 | Host response to open resource manager session response - resource manager unavailable | Host | None | Minimum – POD sets IIR flag and stops responding to polls. | Host reports error to user. ¹ | |
| 14 | Host response to open resource manager session response - incorrect version of resource manager | Host | None | Minimum – POD sets IIR flag and stops responding to polls. | Host reports error to user. ¹ | |
| 15 | Host response to open resource manager session response - resource manager busy | Host | None | Minimum – POD sets IIR flag and stops responding to polls. | Host reports error to user. ¹ | |
| 16 | Host response to open resource manager session response - invalid status byte | Host | None | Minimum – POD sets IIR flag and stops responding to polls. | Host reports error to user. ¹ | |

| | Error condition | Failure mechanism | Host action | SCTE POD module action | Comments |
|----|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 17 | POD fails to respond to profile_inq POD within 5 seconds. | | Host either 1) reports error using screen in figure Figure E.1-1 Error Display 2) retry PCMCIA resets up to two times and then report error using screen in figure Figure E.1-1 Error Display, or 3) reports error and continue to perform PCMCIA resets | None | Host reports error to user. ¹ |
| 18 | Host resource response - no application information resource | Host | None | Minimum – POD sets IIR flag and stops responding to polls Preferred – POD continues operation and will not open a session to the application info resource. | Minimum – Host reports error to user. Preferred - Applications of the POD may not operate correctly, including MMI. ¹ |
| 19 | Host resource response - no Host control resource | Host | None | Minimum – POD sets IIR flag and stops responding to polls. | POD may not be able to do conditional access properly. NOTE: There is a discussion ongoing about DOCSIS only operation. ¹ |
| 20 | Host resource response - no system time resource | Host | None | Minimum – POD continues operation and will not open a session to the system time resource. Preferred – Same as minimum but also reports this in its MMI diagnostics application. | POD operations which require system time will not operate. ¹ |

| Tal | ble E.1-A Error Handling | | | | | |
|-----|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|------|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | Error condition | Failure mechanism | н | lost action | SCTE POD module action | Comments |
| 21 | Host resource response - no MMI resource | Host | None | | Minimum – POD continues operation and will not open a session to the MMI resource. | POD cannot utilize MMI for applications or to report error conditions. ¹ |
| 22 | Host resource response - no low speed communications | Host | None | | Minimum – POD continues operation and will not open a session to the low speed communication resource. Preferred – Same as minimum but also reports this in its MMI diagnostic application. | If OOB reverse path not available, then some applications will be unavailable. ¹ |
| 23 | Host resource response - no homing resource ¹ | Host | None | | Minimum – POD continues operation and will not open a session to the homing resource. Preferred – Same as minimum but also reports this in its MMI diagnostic application. | POD may have some operational problems (i.e. downloading software). ¹ |
| 24 | Host resource response - no copy protection resource | Host | None | | Minimum – POD continues operation, disables descrambling of all conditional access channels, it will not open a session to the copy protection resource, reports to headend if possible, reports error to user, and reports this in its MMI diagnostic application. | All CA channels will not be descrambled, only clear channels may be viewed. ¹ |
| | Host resource response - unknown resource identifier | Host | None | | Minimum – POD continues operation. | Not a failure condition |
| 26 | Host fails to respond to open session request within 5 seconds. | Host | None | | Minimum – POD sets IIR flag and stops responding to polls. | Host reports error to user. ¹ |

| | Error condition | Failure mechanism | Host action | SCTE POD module action | Comments |
|----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 27 | Host response to open application info resource session - application info non-existent | Host | None | Minimum – POD sets IIR flag and stops responding to polls Preferred – POD continues operation and will not open a session to the application info resource. | Minimum – Host reports error to user. Preferred - Applications on the POD may not operate correctly, including MMI. ¹ |
| 28 | Host response to open application info resource session - application info unavailable | Host | None | Minimum – POD sets IIR flag and stops responding to polls Preferred – POD continues operation and will not open a session to the application info resource. | Minimum – Host reports error to user. Preferred - Applications on the POD may not operate correctly, including MMI. ¹ |
| 29 | Host response to open application info resource session - incorrect version of application info | Host | None | Minimum – POD sets IIR flag and stops responding to polls Preferred – POD continues operation and will not open a session to the application info resource. | Minimum – Host reports error to user. Preferred - Applications on the POD may not operate correctly, including MMI. ¹ |
| 30 | Host response to open application info resource session - application info busy | Host | None | Minimum – POD sets IIR flag and stops responding to polls Preferred – POD continues operation and will not open a session to the application info resource. | Minimum – Host reports error to user. Preferred - Applications on the POD may not operate correctly, including MMI. ¹ |
| 31 | Host response to open application info resource session - invalid status byte | Host | None | Minimum – POD sets IIR flag and stops responding to polls Preferred – POD continues operation and will not open a session to the application info resource. | Minimum – Host reports error to user. Preferred - Applications on the POD may not operate correctly, including MMI. ¹ |

| | Error condition | Failure mechanism | Host action | SCTE POD module action | Comments |
|----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 32 | POD module requests to open conditional access session to the Host times out after 5 seconds. | Host | None | Minimum – POD sets IIR flag and stops responding to polls. | Host reports error to user. ¹ |
| 33 | POD response to conditional access resource session - conditional access non-existent | Host | None | Minimum – POD sets IIR flag and stops responding to polls. Preferred – POD will not descramble but will continue other operation and reports this in its MMI diagnostic application. | Minimum - Host reports error to user. Preferred – Scrambled channels are not viewed. ¹ |
| 34 | POD response to conditional access resource session - conditional access unavailable | Host | None | Minimum – POD sets IIR flag and stops responding to polls. Preferred – POD will not descramble but will continue other operation and reports this in its MMI diagnostic application. | Minimum - Host reports error to user. Preferred – Scrambled channels are not viewed. ¹ |
| 35 | POD response to conditional access resource session - incorrect version of conditional access | Host | None | Minimum – POD sets IIR flag and stops responding to polls. Preferred – POD will not descramble but will continue other operation and reports this in its MMI diagnostic application. | Minimum - Host reports error to user. Preferred – Scrambled channels are not viewed. ¹ |
| 36 | POD response to conditional access resource session - conditional access busy | Host | None | Minimum – POD sets IIR flag and stops responding to polls. Preferred – POD will not descramble but will continue other operation and reports this in its MMI diagnostic application. | Minimum - Host reports error to user. Preferred – Scrambled channels are not viewed. ¹ |

| Tal | able E.1-A Error Handling | | | | | | | |
|-----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|
| | Error condition | Failure mechanism | Host action | SCTE POD module action | Comments | | | |
| 37 | POD response to conditional access resource session - invalid status byte | Host | None | Minimum – POD sets IIR flag and stops responding to polls. Preferred – POD will not descramble but will continue other operation and reports this in its MMI diagnostic application. | Minimum - Host reports error to user. Preferred – Scrambled channels are not viewed. ¹ | | | |
| 38 | POD fails to respond to ca_info_inq within 5 seconds. | POD | Host either 1) reports error using screen in figure Figure E.1-1 Error Display 2) retry PCMCIA resets up to two times and then report error using screen in figure Figure E.1-1 Error Display, or 3) reports error and continue to perform PCMCIA resets | None | Host reports error to user. ¹ | | | |
| 39 | POD module requests to open copy protection resource session to the Host times out after 5 seconds. | Host | None | Minimum – POD continues operation, disables descrambling of all conditional access channels, reports to headend if possible, reports this to user, and reports this in its MMI diagnostic application. | All CA channels will not be descrambled, only clear channels may be viewed. ¹ | | | |

| | Error condition | Failure mechanism | Host action | SCTE POD module action | Comments |
|----|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 40 | Host response to open copy protection resource session - copy protection non-existent | Host | None | Minimum – POD continues operation, disables descrambling of all conditional access channels, reports to headend if possible, reports this to user, and reports this in its MMI diagnostic application. | All CA channels will not be descrambled, only clear channels may be viewed. ¹ |
| 41 | Host response to open copy protection resource session - copy protection unavailable | Host | None | Minimum – POD continues operation, disables descrambling of all conditional access channels, reports to headend if possible, reports this to user, and reports this in its MMI diagnostic application. | All CA channels will not be descrambled, only clear channels may be viewed. ¹ |
| 42 | Host response to open copy protection resource session - copy protection busy | Host | None | Minimum – POD continues operation, disables descrambling of all conditional access channels, reports to headend if possible, reports this to user, and reports this in its MMI diagnostic application. | All CA channels will not be descrambled, only clear channels may be viewed. ¹ |
| 43 | Host response to open copy protection resource session - invalid status byte | Host | None | Minimum – POD continues operation, disables descrambling of all conditional access channels, reports to headend if possible, reports this to user, and reports this in its MMI diagnostic application. | All CA channels will not be descrambled, only clear channels may be viewed. ¹ |

| | Error condition | Failure mechanism | | Host action | SCTE POD module action | Comments |
|----|-----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 44 | Host does not support POD's copy protection system. | Host/POD incompatibility | None | | Minimum – POD continues operation, disables descrambling of all conditional access channels, reports to headend if possible, reports this to user, and reports this in its MMI diagnostic application. | All CA channels will not be descrambled, only clear channels may be viewed. ¹ |
| 45 | Host and POD do not mate | Host/POD incompatibility | None | | Minimum – POD continues operation, disables descrambling of all conditional access channels, reports to headend if possible, reports this to user, and reports this in its MMI diagnostic application. | All CA channels will not be descrambled, only clear channels may be viewed. ¹ |
| 46 | Host response to CP_sync - Host busy | Host | None | | Minimum – POD will cease descrambling of copy protected channels. | A copy protected channel will stop being descrambled. |
| 47 | Host response to CP_sync - no CP support | Host | None | | Minimum – POD will cease descrambling of copy protected channels. | A copy protected channel will stop being descrambled. |
| 48 | Host response to CP_sync - invalid status | Host | None | | Minimum – POD will cease descrambling of copy protected channels. | A copy protected channel will stop being descrambled. |
| 49 | Host fails to respond to cp_open_req. | Host | None | | Minimum – POD will cease descrambling of copy protected channels. | A copy protected channel will stop being descrambled. |

| | Error condition | Failure mechanism | Host action | SCTE POD module action | Comments |
|----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 50 | Invalid Host certificate | Host | None | Minimum – POD continues operation, disables descrambling of all conditional access channels, reports to headend if possible, reports this to user, and reports this in its MMI diagnostic application. | All CA channels will not be descrambled, only clear channels may be viewed. ¹ |
| 51 | Write Error (WE) occurs after completion of any transfer from Host to POD | POD or Host | Host performs POD reset. | None | User may see frozen picture on scrambled channels. ¹ |
| 52 | Read Error (RE) occurs after completion of any transfer from POD to Host | POD or Host | Host performs POD reset. | None | User may see frozen picture on scrambled channels. ¹ |
| 53 | POD fails to respond to any request within 5 seconds, other than described by error conditions 17 and 38. | POD | Host performs PCMCIA reset up to two times and then reports error using screen in figure Figure E.1-1 Error Display. | None | User may see frozen picture on scrambled channels. ¹ |
| 54 | Invalid session APDU from Host | Host | None | No action | Not a failure condition |
| 55 | Invalid session APDU from POD | POD | Host ignores invalid sessions. | None | Not a failure condition |
| 56 | Invalid SPDU tag from Host | Host | None | No action | Not a failure condition |
| 57 | Invalid SPDU tag from POD | POD | Host ignores invalid SPDU tags. | None | Not a failure condition |
| | Invalid APDU tag from Host | Host | None | No action | Not a failure condition |
| | Invalid APDU tag from POD | | Host ignores invalid APDU tags. | None | Not a failure condition |
| 60 | Transport ID from Host that has not been created and confirmed by POD | Host | None | No action | Not a failure condition |

| Та | Table E.1-A Error Handling | | | | | | | | |
|----|---------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| | Error condition | Failure mechanism | Host action | SCTE POD module action | Comments | | | | |
| 61 | Transport ID from POD that has not been created by Host. | POD | Host ignores transport ID's that have not been created | None | Not a failure condition | | | | |
| 62 | Session ID from Host that has not been created and confirmed by POD | Host | None | No action | Not a failure condition | | | | |
| 63 | Session ID from POD that has not been created by Host. | POD | Host ignores session ID's that have not been created | None | Not a failure condition | | | | |

NOTE: A POD reset is defined that the Host shall set the RS bit in the command interface control register. A PCMCIA reset is defined that the Host shall set the RESET signal active on the PCMCIA interface.

1 - If the error is caused by an issue with the design of the Host or POD module, this should be detected during certification.

In the even that an error occurs in which the Host must display an error message, the following message, or its equivalent, shall be displayed:

A technical problem is preventing you from receiving all cable services at this time.

Please call your cable operator and report error code 161-xx to have this problem resolved.

Figure E.1-1 Error Display

The "xx" after the error code 161 shall be the item number of the above table which has failed.